# EASY NAC CGX ACCESS DEPLOYMENT GUIDE

**Installation and Configuration Guide** 

Easy NAC, CGX Access, and vLinks are trademarks of InfoExpress, Inc. Other product and service names are trademarks and service marks of their respective owners.

Copyright © 2023 InfoExpress Incorporated. All Rights Reserved. InfoExpress products and services are protected by one or more of the following U.S.

Patents: 8347351, 8347350, 8117645, 8112788, 8108909, 8051460, 7523484, 7890658, 7590733. Additional patents pending.

www.infoexpress.com

www.easynac.com

V3.1.230403

### Contents

Overview	9
Appliance Licensing Options	11
Appliance Specifications (as of April 2023)	11
VM installation	12
Installing on ESX or ESXi server	12
Installing on Hyper-V server	13
Configuring CGX Access	16
Appliance Placement	16
Initial configuration	16
Basic IP configuration	17
Captive Portal IP Address	18
Remediation Portal IP Address	19
Connecting to Active Directory	19
AD Integration	20
Configuring Notifications: Email, SMS, Syslog and WhatsApp	21
Protecting Additional Subnets	24
Adding Network Adapters	24
Using 802.1q trunk ports	25
Additional 802.1q configuration in VMware ESX / ESXi	26
Additional 802.1q configuration in Hyper-V server	
Enforcement Overview	
Configuring Access Policies	34
Automated Device Classification Policies	34
Access Group (ACLs)	
ACL Examples	
ACL Syntax	
Flagging Devices and Whitelisting	41
Flags	41
Whitelist \ Blacklist \ Excludelist	43
The Excludelist	45
The Routerlist	45
Device Discovery	46
Device Profiling	46
DHCP Profiling	46
Fingerbank	46

NMAP Profiling	47
UPNP Profiling	48
SNMP Scan	49
Configuring Device Profiler Policies	
Device Detail Data	
Device Profiling Policies	
Anti-spoofing Protection	
Setting Fingerprints	
MAC Spoofing Detection	
Fingerprint Rescan Interval	
Multi-Factor Authentication	
Mismatched Authentication	
Rogue DHCP Server Detection	
Time \ Location \ List Policies	
Location Policy	
Time Policy	
Device-Lists Policy	60
Configuring Guest Access	
Customize Captive Portal	
Customize Guest Portal	
Guest Registration Templates	
Customizing Device Registration Templates for Guests	
Setting up Sponsors	
Sponsoring Users	
Configuring Device Registration	71
Customizing the Device Registration portal	
Confirm Active Directory settings	71
Customizing Device Registration Methods	
User Experience	
Integration: Anti-Virus \ Endpoint Management	
Bitdefender Integration	77
Carbon Black Cb Response Integration	
Carbon Black Cloud Integration	
CrowdStrike Integration	
Cybereason Integration	
ESET Antivirus Integration	

FireEye HX Integration	
HCL BigFix Integration	
Ivanti Security Controls	
Kaseya VSA Integration	
Kaspersky Antivirus Integration	
ManageEngine Desktop Central Integration	
ManageEngine Patch Manager Integration	
McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator Integration	
Microsoft Intune Integration	
Microsoft SCCM \ WSUS Integration	
Microsoft Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)	117
Moscii StarCat Integration	
Okta Integration	
SentinelOne Integration	
Sophos Integration	
Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager - 14.x	
Trend Micro Integration	
Webroot Integration	
Orchestration with Syslog	
Syslog Event Creation	
Orchestration - Email Alerts	
Email Event Creation	
Malware Lateral Spread Protection - Zero-Day	
Policy-Based Response	
Clearing Zero-day Events	
Handling Exceptions	147
Agent Support	
Working with Agents	149
Hosting Agents	
Installing Agents	151
On-demand Agents (Recommended for Consultants)	
Agent Compliance Policies	
Policy Manager	
Policies	154
Policies Best Practices	
Requirements to Pass a Policy	

Requirements Priority	156
Requirement Best Practices	157
Remediation	157
Pop-up Messages	158
Remediation Actions	158
Auto-remediation	159
Remediation Best Practices	159
Using Active Directory User Group in Automated Device Classification Policy	160
Prerequisites	160
DNS server and Domain Settings for CGX Access	160
Configure Active Directory User Group	160
Joining CGX Access to Active Directory	161
CyberGatekeeper Agent Authentication Plugin	162
Add the User Group as a condition in Automated Device Classification Policy	163
Troubleshooting Agents	163
Installation Issues	163
Connection Issues	165
Advanced Configuration Options	168
Administration Permissions	168
Configuring Radius for CGX Admin Login or BYOD Authentication	170
Radius Server Configuration	170
CGX-Access Configuration	170
Customizing Landing Pages	172
High Availability	174
Requirements	174
Configuration – Standalone Appliances	175
Configure the Primary unit	175
Configure the Backup unit	176
Configuration – Centrally Managed Appliances	178
Configure the CVM to be an Arbiter (optional)	178
Configure the Primary unit	179
Configure the Backup unit	181
Making HA Configuration Changes	
Replace a Primary	
Replace a Backup	
Restore from a Backup Image	

Upgrade to a New Version	183
Other Reconfiguration Changes	183
Central Visibility Manager	184
CVM Overview	184
Required Ports	184
Configuring a Central Visibility Manager	185
Configuring an Appliance to be Centrally Managed	188
Deployment Manager	190
Software Updates	191
Central Visibility Manager – Device Roaming	192
Central Visibility Manager – Integration Proxy	194
Maintenance and Support	196
Upgrading firmware	196
Collecting Logs (Dump2)	197
Appendix A – Certificate Management	200
Option 1 - Generate Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to obtain a certificate from your CA	200
Option 2 - Upload certificate and private key to CGX Access. (When CSR is not generated)	204
Appendix B – vLinks Deployment	207
vLinks Overview	207
vLinks Central Setup	208
vLinks Remote Setup	213
Appendix C – Inline Enforcement	219
Inline Enforcement Overview	219
Features	219
Requirements	219
Sample Test Network	220
Configuration	220
Location	221
Network Interfaces	221
Bridge IP	222
Access Control List	223
Enforcement Ranges	224
Agent Requirement	226
Appendix D – Enforcer Agents	227
Enforcer Agents Overview	227
Enforcer Agent Install	228

Accepting the Enforcer Agent	230
Appendix E – WhatsApp Integration	232
WhatsApp Prerequisites Steps	232
WhatsApp Registration Process	233
Enabling WhatsApp Alerts	236
Enabling WhatsApp for Guest Approval	237
Appendix F – 802.1x RADIUS Proxy	238
Radius Proxy Overview	238
Requirements	238
Features	238
Configuring Radius Proxy settings on CGX Access	239
Appendix G – Using NPS to Authenticate CGX-Access users	243
Add admin group/users to Active Directory	243
Configure Network Policy Server	244
Configure CGX-Access to allow login using radius	248
To authenticate BYOD users via Network Policy server	249

## Disclaimer

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. The statements, configurations, technical data and recommendations in this document are believed to be accurate and reliable but are represented without express or implied warranty. Users must take full responsibility for their applications of any products specified in this document.

This document is provided for your use to help understand the behavior of the product.

Although the information is believed to be substantially accurate at the time that it was written, this document doesn't imply that specific features or functionality are present in your version of the product.

InfoExpress Inc. makes no express or implied warranties regarding the product's features or behavior as described herein. For product specifications, please refer to the product documentation included with product installation.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of that license.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners.

The information in this document is proprietary to InfoExpress Inc.

## **Easy NAC Solution**

## Overview

The Easy NAC solution with CGX Access appliances provides the following features:

#### **Agentless Visibility**

CGX Access lets you see devices that join your network, without the use of agents. Visibility is immediate, with any untrusted device being immediately restricted, as desired. Devices will be both passively and actively profiled to determine operating system, manufacturer, and type of device.

#### **Easy to Implement Enforcement**

CGX Access uses ARP enforcement with DNS and HTTP redirection to control which devices can access the network. ARP enforcement is an out-of-band enforcement method that doesn't require network changes. It works with any network infrastructure, both managed and unmanaged switches. For Remote Access VPN protection, Inline enforcement can be used.

#### Simple LAN \ WLAN Protection

It is easy to control which devices are allowed to access the network. Untrusted devices and rogue infrastructure that joins the network will immediately be detected and automatically restricted in real-time. Devices can be allowed access with simple ON \ OFF controls or policies can be set for automated access.



#### Automated MAC Address Whitelisting

CGX Access will regularly check with your Active Directory server to verify which devices are domainjoined. Devices that are confirmed as domain-joined will automatically be granted full access to the network. Devices that are not domain joined can be manually flagged as approved. In addition, device profiling can also be used to automate the process of flagging approved devices.

#### **Anti-Spoofing Protection**

CGX Access provides a fingerprint feature to protect against MAC address spoofing. All devices on the network are profiled for their MAC address, IP, Operating System, Hostname, and other attributes. This information can then be used to set a unique fingerprint for each device. Once a fingerprint has been set, the device(s) will be protected from spoofing.



#### **Enforce Anti-Virus and Security Policies**

CGX Access integrates with enterprise Anti-Virus vendors and leading endpoint management solutions, to verify endpoint security is active and up to date. By integrating with leading security solutions, CGX Access can enforce compliance with security policies. Devices out-of-compliance can be restricted at the point of network access.

#### Orchestration

Security appliances that are designed to monitor devices and network traffic can send event-based alerts for administrative action. CGX Access can receive e-mail alerts or event-based syslog messages from Firewalls, APT, IPS, SIEM, and many other types of security devices and then take immediate action when necessary. If CGX Access receives an alert that a device has malware, we can restrict it immediately.

#### Malware Lateral Spread Protection-Zero-day Protection

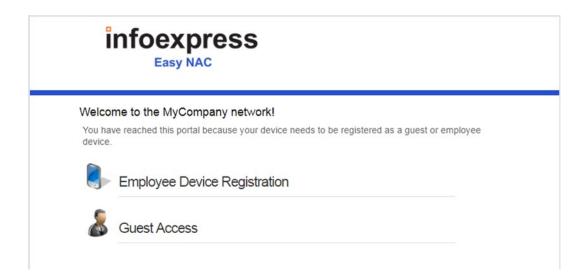
CGX Access unique layer-2 visibility of the network allows for the immediate detection of suspicious behavior, such as devices making excessive connections attempts to endpoints on the same network segment. This real-time detection provides immediate protection against zero-day malware propagating on the network.

#### **BYOD Registration**

CGX Access provides a self-registration portal to automate the BYOD registration process. Policies can be set, by groups, to limit the number and type of BYOD devices. It improves security by tracking device ownership, restricting the locations, and limiting network access to approved resources.

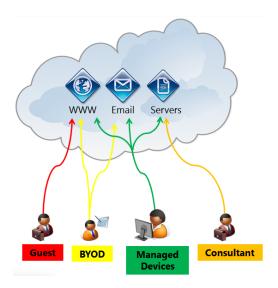
#### **Guest Access**

CGX Access lets sponsors register guest accounts or authorize guests to create their own accounts via the landing page. Sponsors can authorize individual registrations or register groups for classes or meetings with configurable expiration times.



#### **Role-based Access Control**

CGX Access enhances security by limiting devices to only the resources required. Guests are limited to internet only access. BYOD and consultant devices can be limited to specific resources.



#### **Appliance Licensing Options**

CGX Access is available as a physical appliance or as a virtual appliance. Licensing is based on the number of devices that CGX Access solution has visibility of. When using the Central Visibility Manager, a distributed license option will enable a license to be shared between multiple appliances.

Please contact your authorized partner or InfoExpress for up-to-date information on licensing. sales@infoexpress.com

#### **Appliance Specifications (as of April 2023)**

Appliance Specifications	Access Mini CGXA-S10	CGX Access CGXA-S100	Access 200 CGXA-S200	Access 500 CGXA-S500	Access 600 CGXA-S600	Access VM ENAC-VM- SMB	Access VM ENAC-VM- ENT
Scalability		I	I	I	<u> </u>		I
Maximum Devices	300*	2500*	5,000*	10,000*	10,000*	500*	10,000*
Maximum Subnets	10	100	100*	200*	200*	10	200*
Number of Ports	4	8	8	8	10 2 pairs of by- pass NICs.	8-10 virtual adapters	8-10 virtual adapters

\* Capacity is approximate and depends on VLANs protected, endpoints, and features enabled.

## VM installation

### Installing on ESX or ESXi server

The virtual CGX Access appliance can be deployed as an .ovf template native to VMWare. You will need the CGX Access .ovf image, which is usually provided as a zip file. Please contact InfoExpress or your business partner to obtain this file.

- Unzip the provided file to a location accessible to the vSphere client application.
- In the VMWare vSphere Client, choose File Deploy OVF Template
- On the first screen, select the .ovf file

OVF Template Details Name and Location Disk Format	Deploy OVF Template Source Select the source location.	
	Source OVF Template Details Name and Location Disk Format Ready to Complete	:\\Users\Admin\Desktopi_CGX-Access\CGX-Access.ovf    Browse  Enter a URL to download and install the OVF package from the Internet, or specify a location accessible from your computer, such as a local hard drive, a

- Click next on the OVF Template Details screen. (There may be a warning screen here, but you can proceed).
- Provide a name and optionally a location for the template and click 'Next'
- Select the datastore where the virtual machine files should be kept and click 'Next'
- Select the desired format for your installation and click 'Next'
- Select the desired network mapping for the interfaces and click 'Next'
- Verify the options and click 'Finish' when ready to proceed
- The vSphere client will then proceed to deploy the image.

## Installing on Hyper-V server

The virtual CGX Access appliance can be deployed using Hyper-V Manager, Windows Server 2012 R2 and above only. The CGX Access Hyper-V image is usually provided as a zip file. Please contact InfoExpress or your business partner to obtain this file.

- Unzip the provided file to a location accessible to the Hyper-V Manager.
- In the Hyper-V Manager, Click Action menu and select Import Virtual Machine
- On the first screen, Specify the folder of extracted image and click next

	Import Virtual Machine	x
Locate Folder		
Before You Begin	Specify the folder containing the virtual machine to import.	
Locate Folder	Folder: C:\CGX-Access-3.0\ Browse	
Select Virtual Machine		
Choose Import Type Summary		
	< Previous Next > Finish Cancel	

- Select the listed virtual machine 'CGX-Access-3.0.ovf. Click next.
- Choose Import type as 'copy the virtual machine (create a unique ID)'
- Click Next and specify the Destination folders for different settings

2	Import Virtual Machine			
Choose Folders for Virtual Machine Files				
Before You Begin Locate Folder Select Virtual Machine Choose Import Type Choose Destination	You can specify new or existing folders to store the virtual machine files. Otherwise, the wizard imports the files to default Hyper-V folders on this computer, or to folders specified in the virtual machine configuration.  Store the virtual machine in a different location Virtual machine configuration folder:			
Choose Storage Folders Summary	D:\Hyper-VC\       Browse         Chedpoint store:       Browse         D:\Hyper-VC\       Browse         Smart Paging folder:       D:\Hyper-VC\         D:\Hyper-VC\       Browse			
	< Previous Next > Finish Cancel			

• Select the Virtual Hard Disk destination folder in the next screen.

	Import Virtual Machine
Choose Fold	ers to Store Virtual Hard Disks
Before You Begin Locate Folder Select Virtual Machine Choose Import Type Choose Destination Choose Storage Folders Summary	Where do you want to store the imported virtual hard disks for this virtual machine? Location: D:\Hyper-VC\Virtual Hard Disks\ Browse
	< Previous Next > Finish Cancel

- Verify the options on Summary page and click 'Finish' when ready to proceed.
- The Wizard will then proceed to deploy the image.
- The Virtual Machine will be listed in Hyper-V Manager.
- Select the virtual machine 'CGX-Access-3.0' and click 'Settings' from 'Action' menu.

• Select the Network Adapter and assign a Virtual switch from the right-side drop-down box as highlighted below and Apply the setting.

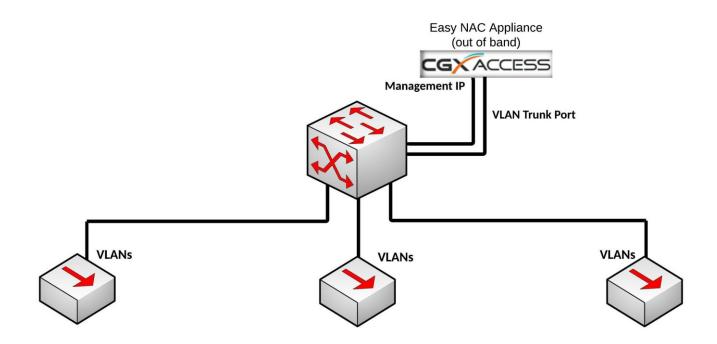
	Settings for CGX-Access-2.3 on	2
CGX-Access-2.3		
<ul> <li>★ Hardware</li> <li>▲ Add Hardware</li> <li>▲ BIOS Boot from CD</li> <li>▲ Memory 4096 MB</li> <li>▲ Processor 4 Virtual processors</li> <li>▲ IDE Controller 0</li> </ul>	Network Adapter Specify the configuration of the network adapter or remove the network adapter. Virtual switch: Not connected VLAN ID Enable virtual LAN identification The VLAN identifier specifies the virtual LAN that this virtual machine will use for all	_
<ul> <li>Hard Drive CGX-Access-2.3.vhdx</li> <li>IDE Controller 1</li> <li>DVD Drive None</li> <li>SCSI Controller</li> <li>Network Adapter Not connected</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>network communications through this network adapter.</li> <li>Bandwidth Management</li> <li>Enable bandwidth management</li> <li>Specify how this network adapter utilizes network bandwidth. Both Minimum Bandwidth and Maximum Bandwidth are measured in Megabits per second.</li> </ul>	
Network Adapter     Not connected     Not connected     Not connected     Not connected     Not connected     Not connected     Network Adapter	Minimum bandwidth:       0       Mbps         Maximum bandwidth:       0       Mbps         Image: To leave the minimum or maximum unrestricted, specify 0 as the value.	
Not connected	To remove the network adapter from this virtual machine, click Remove.           Remove           Image: the second s	
Network Adapter     Not connected     OOM 1     None     COM 2	V OK Cancel Apply	

## **Configuring CGX Access**

This section will walk the administrator through the steps needed to configure a CGX Access appliance.

## **Appliance Placement**

CGX Access provides protection \ access control on the subnets it is attached to, with layer-2 visibility. The CGX Access appliance can protects up to 200 VLANs concurrently with the use of 802.1q trunk ports. The Managed IP interface is the primary interface and is used for appliance management. The CGX Access appliance should be able to communicate with the AD server via the Managed IP. For simple one subnet testing, the Managed IP should be on a subnet you wish to enforce access control on. To support multiple VLANs, additional network interfaces or trunk ports can be used.



## **Initial configuration**

CGX Access typically requires three static IP addresses in a deployment. One IP is used for management of CGX Access appliance. The second IP is used for the captive portal (landing page), and a third IP is used for a remediation portal. When protecting additional VLANs, each additional subnet protected will also use one IP on its respective subnet. For example, when protecting ten subnets, a total of twelve IPs will be used. These additional IP's can be dynamically assigned by DHCP.

**Note:** The CGX Access appliance provides built-in ARP-based enforcement. Enforcement can be enabled on up-to 200 VLANs, including the subnet with the Managed IP.

#### **Basic IP configuration**

- For physical appliances, use a direct connect ethernet cable for SSH access to the default IP Address 10.0.0.250/24. Alternatively, plug-in a keyboard and HDMI monitor.
- For virtual appliances, open a console window and power on the VM.

Once the boot cycle is complete you will be prompted for a login.

- Login as admin/admin.
- From the main menu choose 1 (Run setup wizard) and follow the prompts to set the Managed IP address and netmask, the default gateway, DNS servers, system name, time zone and date/time.

**Note:** Keep the admin password in a safe place. If it is lost without having access to an alternate admin level account, there will be no way to recover the password.

#### Default user accounts are:

- admin used for initial setup and configuration as well as SSH access for maintenance tasks
- cguser used for uploading files through ftp

Note: The default passwords are the same as the username. These default passwords should be changed.

When the setup wizard completes, the system should be accessible on the network.

- Confirm that you can ping the management IP from another system on the same subnet and also from a system on another subnet. If the pings fail double check the physical or virtual connections and the basic IP configuration
- Connect to the CGX Access web GUI by opening https://<Managed ip> (that was configured previously). Compatible browsers include:
  - o Microsoft Edge
  - Firefox v65 or higher
  - Chrome Version 89 or higher
  - Safari v12 or higher

InfoExpress - CGX Access / ×	
← → C ▲ Not secure   bttps://192.168.253.220/index.php?r=site/login	२ ★ :
infoexpress CGX Access Standalone	
Enter username and password to continue.	
Username     Password	
Login	

• Login as user admin (default password admin). A modern browser such as Chrome is strongly recommended. Older versions of IE or Firefox may not display the pages correctly.

#### **Captive Portal IP Address**

A separate IP address will be used for the Captive Portal \ Landing pages. When configured, new devices joining the network can be redirected to this page, using the default "DNSREDIRECT(CaptivePortal)" rule in the default "Restricted" Access Group (ACL). To configure this Captive Portal IP address...

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Provide IP and subnet mask in the field provide

Date and Time:								
Fri May 15 11:14:40 SGT 202	0 <u>Change</u>							
Configure Networking:								
Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	Location		Configuration State	VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:70	192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	100			•	Managed IP	+
Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:7a	/					Ψ	Off T	+
Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:84	/					Ŧ	Off ▼	+
Adapter #4 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:8e	/					Ŧ	Off T	+
NS Servers	192.168.253.100							
lostname	cgx-singapore	* locked						
Domain Name	iex.demo	* locked						
Landing Pages								
Support NAT'd								
lost Name for Captive Portal								
Captive Portal's IP Address IP/Netmask)	192.168.253.221/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1 🔻						
lost Name for Remediation Portal								
Remediation Portal's IP Address IP/Netmask)	192.168.253.222/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1 V						
	Submit							

• Click Submit button

#### **Remediation Portal IP Address**

An additional static IP can be assigned to an optional Remediation Portal. When configured, the noncompliant endpoints can be redirected to this page, so they are aware their device is restricted and know the reason why.

To configure a Remediation Portal IP, use the same steps as above.

#### **Connecting to Active Directory**

Authentication credentials are often stored in an Active Directory server. Active Directory can be used to validate credentials with the following CGX Access features:

- Employee Device Registration (see Configuring Device Registration)
- Sponsoring Guest accounts (see Configuring Guest Access)
- Permissions for administrators to access the management GUI (see Advance Configuration)

#### **Configure Active Directory server settings on CGX Access**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings.
- Click on Active Directory Servers

it Setting		
Add New Active Direct	tory Server	
Server 1 ×		
Host or IP	192.168.253.100	
Account Suffix	@iex.demo	
LDAP Query User Name	rnd	
DAP Query Password	•••••	
Encryption	None v	
Group Query DN Prefix		
Query Timeout		
Test LDAP Connection		
Computer Query Setting	]5	
Query Covers	Entire Directory V	
Test Computer Query		

- Under "Active Directory Server", enter the host or IP address of the AD domain controller and the Account suffix in the "Account Suffix" field. A Username and Password is often required.
- Use the "Test LDAP connection" button to test the settings

**Note:** the *@* symbol should be included in the Account Suffix **Note:** up to 20 AD servers can be configured per appliance

#### **AD Integration**

**Tip:** For faster deployments, AD integration can be enabled. When enabled, devices joined to the domain will be flagged as AD-managed, and automatically granted full access to the network.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on Active Directory Integration

Edit Action		×
Active Directory Integration		
Enable Integration		
Server Configuration		
Query Interval (Seconds)	3600	
Policy		
CONDITION		FLAG
Flag devices that are domain computed	ters	AD-managed 🔻
Single AD Server		
Flag devices with no user login in	3 days	stale-login 🔻
Multiple AD Servers		
Flag device with no user login in	15 days	stale-login 🔻
		updated only after it's 14 days or
older, so the check period should	be at least 15 days.	
		Save Cancel Help

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Check "Flag the device if it is a domain computer"
- DNS can sometimes be useful to increase the number of devices flagged as AD-managed. However, if DNS information is stale, it can lead to false positives. To use DNS enable, Configuration → Integration → Setting Shared by All the Integrations

**Note:** In some cases, AD computer objects may be stored in a non-default OU. In these cases, it may be necessary to adjust the OUs that need to be queried. Custom OUs can be specified in the Active Directory Server section under Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings

Example 1 - An Active Directory of domain CGX.ACCESS has an OU called "USA" and computer accounts for the OU is stored under "Computers". The custom OU query should look like CN=Computers, OU=USA

Computer Query Setting	js
Query Covers	Custom OUs
Custom OUs	CN=Computers, OU=USA
Test Computer Query	

Example 2 - An Active Directory of domain CGX.ACCESS has an OU called "USA" and computer accounts for the OU is stored under another child-OU named "All-USA-PCs". The custom OU query should look like OU=All-USA-PCs, OU=USA

Computer Query Settin	gs	
Query Covers	Custom OUs	T
Custom OUs	OU=All-USA-PCs, OU=USA	li
Test Computer Query		

Tip: It may be easier to set the Query to cover the Entire Directory.

#### Configuring Notifications: Email, SMS, Syslog and WhatsApp

CGX Access can send notifications when certain events occur. These event triggers are configured with Automated Device Classifications, Monitoring rules, or with guest registration.

To configure the email and SMS servers used by CGX Access:

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings.
- Find Server section
- Select appropriate notification server

Edit Setting		×
Outbound Mail Server		
Host or IP	E.g. smtp.gmail.com or smtp.gm	
User Name		
Password		
Encryption	MSA/STARTTLS (Port 587) V	
	Ignore Certificate Validation	
Send Email		
Inbound Mail Server		
Host or IP	E.g. imap.gmail.com or imap.gm	
User Name		
Password		
Encryption	IMAP (Port 143) V	
Test Inbou	nd Server	
Email Accounts Used	to Send Reports, Guest Confirmations or Password Resets	
Sender		
BCCed		
	Save Cancel Help	

- Enter the information needed and click 'Save'.
- The Inbound Mail Server is for use with Orchestration integrations with E-mail
- Enter an email address used as sender address and optionally one or more addresses that will be Bcc'd on guest registration emails
- Go to Configuration → General Settings and click on the "Contact Information for Notifications" section.

Edit Setting			×
<b>Recipients for Notifi</b>	cations		
Contact 1		Contact 2	
Name	Admin	Name	Second Admin2
E-mail Address	admin1@infoexpress.com	E-mail Address	admin2@infoexpress.com
SMS Number		SMS Number	
(e.g. 16505551212)		(e.g. 16505551212)	
WhatsApp Contact		WhatsApp Contact	
( e.g. +141552233444)		(e.g. +141552233444)	
Syslog Notification			
Destination Syslog	· · ·		
Server			
Log Format	~		
			Save Cancel Help

• Fill in the info for at least one administrative contact that should get notified when triggering conditions occur

Notifications can be configured and triggered using Automated Device Classification policies, Monitoring policies, or Device Profiling policies. Different actions are available when a condition is detected:

Create New Action			×
Action	Send Notification		
Notify	Method	🗹 Email	
Send Notification		SMS	
Send Notification		U WhatsApp	
		✓ Syslog	
	Check All Applicable	🗹 Admin	
	Recipients	Second Admin2	
	Message	High Risk Device detected	
		4	
			Save Cancel Help

**Note:** For setup of WhatsApp notifications please see <u>Appendix E</u>.

## **Protecting Additional Subnets**

With the use of ARP enforcement, CGX Access requires layer-2 visibility of ARP broadcast traffic to detect and restrict devices. There are two methods that can be used to extend visibility to multiple subnets.

- Method 1 Physical connection: Add additional network adapter and plug-in to a normal switch access port to extend protection to additional subnet. The physical appliances support up-to 6 adapters and the virtual appliance can support up to 10 adapters. Hyper-V supports 8 adapters.
- Method 2 802.1q trunk: Use 802.1q trunk ports so multiple VLANs can be protected with just one or more adapters. With the use of trunk ports up to 200 VLANs can be protected. Multiple adapters are recommended if there is extensive traffic from devices being restricted with ACLs.
  - **Virtual CGX Access appliances** also supports 802.1q. Please note that additional configuration in the ESX/ESXi or Hyper-V server would be required.

#### **Adding Network Adapters**

If using VMware, the virtual appliance is pre-configured with 10 virtual adapters. To configure adapters inside the virtual appliance, go to:

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Select the method the IP address will be assigned to the adapter

onfiguration - Policies	▼ NAC ▼ Visibility ▼							
ystem Configuration: 😵								
Date and Time: Fri May 15 17:05:15 SG	T 2020 <u>Change</u>							
onfigure Networking:	TD / Network	Cataway	Mahria		Location	Configuration	Chake	
onfigure Networking: Adapters Adapter #1 MAC: 00:06:29:22:93:70	IP / Netmask 192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	Gateway 192.168.253.254	Metric	VLAN ID	Location	Configuration Managed IP	State	VLA +
Adapters Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0e:29:22:93:70 Adapter #2				VLAN ID		Managed IP		
Adapters Adapter #1				VLAN ID	-	Managed IP		+

- Complete IP address information if a static IP address will be used. DHCP can also be used.
- Metric field can be left blank (typically not required)
- Location is optional, and can be used in policies

Configure Networking:							
Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	Location	Configuration State	VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:70	192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	100		-	Managed IP	+
Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:7a	192.168.20.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.20.1			HQ-IT dept 🔻	Static IP V	+
Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:84	/					Off	+

• To confirm the network changes, click the Submit button

Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	Location	Configuration State	VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:70	192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	100		-	Managed IP	+
Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:7a	192.168.20.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.20.1			HQ-IT dept 🔻	Static IP V	+
Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:84	/				-	Off	+
DNS Servers	192.168.253.100						
Hostname	cgx-singapore	* locked					
Domain Name	iex.demo	* locked					
Landing Pages		-					
Support NAT'd							
Host Name for Captive Portal							
Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)	192.168.253.221/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1					
Host Name for Remediation Portal							
Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)	192.168.253.222/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1					
	Submit						

**Note:** When adding adapters to the CGX Access virtual appliance, the adapter must first be provisioned within the VMware host and then connected to the virtual appliance.

#### Using 802.1q trunk ports

If the network is configured to support VLAN tagging, then adding additional VLANs is simple.

**Note:** One or more adapters connected to the CGX Access appliance must be attached to a switch port(s) configured as a trunk port.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Click "+" button on the adapter attached to a trunk port

onfigure Networking:							
Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	Location	Configuration Sta	te VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:70	192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	100		-	Managed IP	+
Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:7a	/				· ·	Off	+
Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:84	/				· ·	Off	+
Adapter #4 MAC: 00:0e:29:22:93:8e	/					Off	+

• Complete VLAN ID and static IP address information, if necessary. DHCP can be used.

Add Vlan	×
VLAN ID (1-4094) 100	
DHCP V IP / Netmask	
Gateway	
	Cancel Save

• To confirm the network changes, click the Submit button...

onfigure Networking:								
Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	Location	Configuration	State	VLA
Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:70	192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	100		-	Managed IP	Ŷ	+
	/				-	Off 🔻		+
Adapter #2			5100	100		DHCP V		Û
MAC: 00:0e:29:22:93:7a			5101	101		DHCP V		Û
			5102	102		DHCP V		Û
Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:84	/				-	Off T		+
Adapter #4 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:8e	/				-	Off T		+
Adapter #5 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:98	/				· ·	Off		+
DNS Servers	192.168.253.100							
Hostname	cgx-singapore	* locked						
Domain Name	iex.demo	* locked						
Landing Pages								
Support NAT'd								
Host Name for Captive Portal								
Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)	192.168.253.221/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1						
Host Name for Remediation Portal								
Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)	192.168.253.222/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1 V						
	Submit							

**Note:** One or more adapters connected to the CGX Access appliance must be attached to a switch port(s) configured as a trunk port.

#### Additional 802.1q configuration in VMware ESX / ESXi

In order for CGX Access virtual appliances to support the 802.1q, a port group that supports 802.1q VLAN tagging is needed. To configure it in your VMware virtual switch in ESX/ESXi, please follows the steps below:

- 1. Edit host networking
- 2. Navigate to Host  $\rightarrow$  Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Networking  $\rightarrow$  vSwitch  $\rightarrow$  Properties.
- 3. Click Ports  $\rightarrow$  Portgroup  $\rightarrow$  Edit.
- 4. Click the General tab.
- 5. Set the VLAN ID to All (4095) to trunked all VLANs.
- 6. Click OK

🚱 Add Network Wizard		
Virtual Machines - Conne Use network labels to id	-	tions common to two or more hosts.
Connection Type Network Access Connection Settings Summary	Port Group Properties Network Label: VLAN ID (Optional):	Trunk Port 4095

7. Assign the CGX-Access virtual appliance to use the Trunk Port created as in follows:

Stan	dard Switch: vSwitch1	Remove	Properti	ies
	Virtual Machine Port Group Trunk 1 virtual machine(s)   VLAN ID: All (4095)	Physical Adapters Physical Adapters Physical Adapters Physical Adapters Physical Adapters Physical Adapters	0 Full	P
	CGX-Access			

The physical network adapter would be required to connect to the trunk port on the physical networking switch.

If your environment is using "Vmware Distributed switch", you can add a "Distributed Port group" specifying a VLAN range (or complete VLAN range 0-4094). Assign this port group to the CGX-Access trunk port.

A VM_Dev_VLAN20 - Edit S	Settings		(
General	VLAN type:	VLAN trunking	
Advanced	VLAN trunk range:	0-4094	
Security			
Traffic shaping			
VLAN			

#### Additional 802.1q configuration in Hyper-V server

For CGX Access virtual appliances to support the 802.1q, Hyper-V's network adapters should be configured to tag frames. To enable trunking, some commands need to be entered from Windows PowerShell. The following screenshots show pre-requisite configuration.

- Hyper-V physical network adapter should support 802.1q tagging
- Switch port on which CGX Access trunk port is connected should support 802.1q tagging.
- From Virtual switch manager, configure virtual switch as "External Network"

Virtual	Switch Manager for WIN-0JJRM3DBOTU
<ul> <li>Virtual Switches</li> <li>New virtual network switch</li> <li>VSwitch1 Intel(R) 82578DC Gigabit Network</li> <li>Global Network Settings</li> <li>MAC Address Range 00-15-5D-64+6D-00 to 00-15-5D-6</li> </ul>	Switch Manager for Win-ODKMISDBOTO         Image:         Name:         VSwitch1         Notes:         Image:         Viation         Vp:         Connection type         What do you want to connect this virtual switch to?         Image:         Image: <td< td=""></td<>
	Switch.

• Select VM CGX-Access-3.0 (or vmname) and from right hand pane, click on settings. Assign virtual switch to the network adapter on CGX Access.

CGX-Access-2.3	¥	■ ▶   Q.
* Hardware	^	Network Adapter
📆 Add Hardware		
N BIOS		Specify the configuration of the network adapter or remove the network adapter.
Boot from CD Memory		Virtual switch:
2048 MB		
🗄 🔲 Processor		VLAN ID
4 Virtual processors		Enable virtual LAN identification
IDE Controller 0		The VLAN identifier specifies the virtual LAN that this virtual machine will use for all
Hard Drive CGX-Access-2.3.vbdx		network communications through this network adapter.
IDE Controller 1		2
DVD Drive	≡	
None		Bandwidth Management
SCSI Controller		Enable bandwidth management
Network Adapter 1		Specify how this network adapter utilizes network bandwidth. Both Minimum
vSwitch1  Network Adapter 2		Bandwidth and Maximum Bandwidth are measured in Megabits per second.
Not connected		Minimum bandwidth: 0 Mbps
🗄 🏺 Network Adapter 3		Maximum bandwidth: 0 Mbps
Not connected		
Network Adapter 4 Not connected		To leave the minimum or maximum unrestricted, specify 0 as the value.
Network Adapter 5	Н	To service the extended data from this side of one data with De
Not connected		To remove the network adapter from this virtual machine, dick Remove.
Image: Provide the matching of the matching		Remove
Not connected		Use a legacy network adapter instead of this network adapter to perform a
Network Adapter 7 Not connected		network-based installation of the guest operating system or when integration services are not installed in the guest operating system.
Ili Network Adapter 8		
Not connected		Some settings cannot be modified because the virtual machine was running when this window was opened. To modify a setting that is unavailable, shut down the
T COM 1		virtual machine and then reopen this window.
None		
T COM 2	×	

• Start Windows PowerShell and enter following command to configure "Network Adapter 1" as trunk port with allowed vlans 0,2,3,5,100 and Native Vlan as 0 (1 on cisco)

*Set-VMNetworkAdaptervlan -VMName CGX-Access-3.0 -VMNetworkAdapterName "Network Adapter 1" -Trunk -AllowedVlanIdList "0,2,3,5,100" -NativeVlanId 0* 

• To verify enter following command.

Get-VMNetworkAdaptervlan -VMName CGX-Access-3.0

2		Administrator: Windows PowerShell	_ <b>D</b> X
nk -AllowedV 5 C:\Users\Ad	lanIdList "0,2,3,5,100 dministrator>	tworkAdaptervlan -VMName CGX-Access-2.3 -VMNetworkAdapterName "Network A ' -NativeVlanId 0 tworkadaptervlan -vmname CGX-Access-2.3	dapter 1" -Tr
4Name	VMNetworkAdapterName	Mode VlanList	
GX-Access-2. GX-Access-2. GX-Access-2. GX-Access-2. GX-Access-2. GX-Access-2. GX-Access-2.	3 Network Adapter 1 3 Network Adapter 2 3 Network Adapter 3 3 Network Adapter 4 3 Network Adapter 5 3 Network Adapter 7 5 Network Adapter 8 3 Network Adapter 8	Trunk 0,0,2-3,5,100 Untagged Untagged Untagged Untagged Untagged Untagged Untagged Untagged	
5 C:\Users\Ad	dministrator>		

#### Configuration required on Switch port. (cisco switch configuration used in example)

In this example, we will allow vlans 2,3,5,100 with native vlan 1 (*Cisco vlan1 = HyperV-vlan0*) Switch#configure terminal Switch(config)#interface fastEthernet 0/3 Switch(config-if)#switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q Switch(config-if)#switchport mode trunk Switch(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan 2,3,5,100 Switch(config-if)#switchport trunk native vlan 2 [in case you want a native vlan other than 1] Switch(config-if)#switchport trunk native vlan 2 [in case you want a native vlan other than 1]

#### Configuring CGX Access Network adapters with VLANs

- Start CGX Access VM
- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Click "Add VLAN" button on the adapter attached to a trunk port

InfoExpress - CGX Acce	ss Admin × +								- 0	×
< → C ☆ ▲	Not secure   10.20.0.200/index.pl	hp?r=site/index						\$	0 0 0	) :
CGX Access	Configuration - Policies -	NAC - Visibility -						Welcome adn	hin Sign Out	•
CGX Access Management     CGX Access Logs	System Configuration: 💕									
Agent Logging Server	Date and Time:									
• About	Mon May 18 8:48:07 IST 2020	0 Change								. 11
Support Tools	Configure Networking:									
	Adapters	TD / Notmask	Catoway	Motric	VIAN TO	vLinks	Location	Configuration State	VIAN	
	Adapter #1				VEAT 10	VLIIK5				
	MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:47	10.20.0.200/255.255.255.0	10.20.0.2	100			vian1 +	Managed IP V		
	Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:51	/		500			Ψ	▼ 110	+	
	Adapter #3 MAC: 0010c12910218215b	/		1000				• MO	e admin Sign Out	
	Adapter #4 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:65	1		1500				• 110	+	
	DNS Servers	10.20.0.3								611
	Hostname	CGX-Access								
	Domain Name									41
	Landing Pages									. 11
	Support NAT'd	2								
	Host Name for Captive Portal Captive Portal's IP Address									4.11
	(IP/Netmask)	10.20.0.221/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1 T							
	Host Name for Remediation Portal									
	Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)		Adapter #1 T							
		Submit							VLAN * * Configure	
	Static Routes	IP / Netmask       Gateway       Metric       VLAN ID       vLinks       Location       Configuration       State         10.20.0.200/255.255.00       10.20.0.2       100       Imaged IP       <		Configure						
	Active Directory Domain Settin	ngs:								
	CGX Access is not joined to Active	e Directory							Configure	
	Site Settings									
	CGX Access Server Mode		Standalone Ser	ver	۲					
			Submit							
	Configure Services:									

• Complete VLAN ID and IP address information. Static IP addresses or DHCP can be used.

CAccess Management CAccess Logs Int Logging Server	Configuration  Policies  System Configuration:	NAC - Visibility -					
Access Logs	System Configuration: 💕			Enforcem	ent is disabled on 2 of 2 sul	Welcome admin	<u>1</u> Sign Ou
ent Logging Server							
ut	Date and Time: Mon May 18 9:03:44 IST 2020	Change					
port Tools	Configure Networking:						
	Adapters	IP / Netmask	Add Vlan	×	Location	Configuration State	VLAN
	Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:47	10.20.0.200/255.255.255.0			vian1 👻	Managed IP	+
	Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:51	/	VLAN ID (1-4094)		· · ·	• no	+
	Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:56	/	3			• no	+
	Adapter #4 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:65	/	DHCP V IP / Netmask			Off	+
	DNS Servers	10.20.0.3					
	Hostname	cgx-access					
	Domain Name		Gateway				
	Landing Pages						
	Support NAT'd		vLinks				
	Host Name for Captive Portal		No vLinks 🔻				
	Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)	10.20.0.221/255.255.255.0					
	Host Name for Remediation Portal Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmark)			Cancel Save			
	(aryineumesk)	Submit		11.			
	Static Routes						Configur
	Active Directory Domain Settir	105:					
	CGX Access is not joined to Active						Configur
	Site Settings						
	CGX Access Server Mode		Standalone Server	<b>v</b>			

• Repeat above step for adding more VLANs then click on submit

Standalone     Configuration *     Point is *     Configuration *     Point is *       XX Access Management     X Access Logs     Endocring in Configuration **     System Configuration **       Date and Time: Mon Apr 8 8:31:11 IST 2019     Change	CALCARCENSION	· → C 合 🔺	Not secure   https://10.20.0.218/i	ndex.php?r=site/index					\$ 0	<mark>⊉</mark>   (
X Access Loga   System Configuration: 3   ent Logaing Server   out   point Tools   Configure Networking:     Image: signature si	COX.Access Logal       System Configuration: (B)         Agent Logal Server       Mon AP 8 8:31:11 57 2019       Chance         System Configuration: (B)       Mon AP 8 8:31:11 57 2019       Chance         Mapper Foi       10:20:0.28/255:255.05       10:20:0.28       VLAN ID Configuration       State         Mapper Foi       10:20:0.28/255:255.05       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       Mapper Foi       Mapper Foi         Mapper Foi       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       Mapper Foi       Mapper Foi         Mapper Foi       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       10:20:0.28       Mapper Foi		Configuration - Policies -	NAC - Visibility -			Enforcement is disabled on 1 of	1 subnet	Welcome admin	Sign O
X A costs and a cost and Time: Mon Apr 8 8:31:11 IST 2019 Change Configure Networking: D/ Netmask Gateway VLAN ID Configuration State Mon Costs 36:64:64:14 0 0:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00	GKAccess   gent Logging Server, boil	GX Access Management	System Configuration:							
with appredict for an appredict for a state in the second seco	with approximation       Mon Apr 8:33:11157.2019       Change         peport Tools       IP / Netmask       Gateway       VLAN ID       Configuration       State         Mach Dor 71,       10:20:0:221/250:250:25:0:0       10:20:0:2       Using DHCP for IP addressigateway       Remove       Remove         Mach Dor 71,       10:20:0:221/250:250:0       10:20:0:2       Using DHCP for IP addressigateway       Remove       Remove         Mach Dor 72,       Add VLAN       0 Off       Add VLAN       Remove       Remove         Mach Dor 30:564:46:13       I       0 Off       Add VLAN       Remove       Remove         Mach Dor 30:564:46:13       I       0 Off       Add VLAN       Add VLAN       Add VLAN         Mach Dor 30:564:46:13       I       0 Off       Add VLAN	GX Access Logs								
out       Configure Networking:         Configure Networking:       ID / Netmask       Gateway       VLAN ID       Configuration       State         Adapter #1       ID 20.0.218/255.255.255.0       ID 20.0.2       (Management IP)       Imagement IP)       Adapter #1         Adapter #2       ID 20.0.218/255.255.255.0       ID 20.0.2       ID 200.02       Imagement IP)       Imagement IP)       Add VLAN         Adapter #2       Imagement IP)       Imagement IP)       Imagement IP)       Imagement IP)       Add VLAN         Adapter #2       Imagement IP)       Ima	out       Configure Networking:         Provent Tools       Configure Networking:         Image: 1       Image: 2         Mac: 0013506446014       Image: 2         Mac: 0013506446015       Image: 2         Mac: 001350644601	ent Logging Server		Change						
Image: Fig. 1         Fig. 1         Fig. 1	IP / Netmask       Gateway       VLN ID       Configuration       State         Magter #1       10-20-0.218/255/255.255.0       10-20-0.2       (Management IP)       0       Add VLAN         Magter #2       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1         Magter #3       1	out	Hom Apr 6 6.51.11 151 2015	Change						
Magter #1.       10.20.0.218/255.255.05       10.20.0.2       (Management IP)          Mad VLAN          MAC. (00155.0164464013       ////////////////////////////////////	Adapter #1 10.20.0.210/255.255.255.0 10.20.0.2 (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:14 5 Using DHCP for IP addressigateway (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / 0ff Add VLAN   Adapter #2 / 0ff (Madapter IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Management IP)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Management IP) (Mada VLAN)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / (Management IP) (Mada VLAN)   McC 0013/53de44.4d:15 / <	oport Tools	Configure Networking:							
Adapter #1       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated         McC: Sonside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated         McC: Sonside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated         McC: Sonside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated         McC: Sonside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated         McC: Sonside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Indin-Indicated       Image: Sinside-Ind	Adapter #1.   MAC 0013536464.do14   MAC 0013536464.do13   MAC			IP / Netmask	Gateway	VLAN ID	Configuration	State		
Adapter #1	Adapter #1   MAC1001353644.6d14   MAC100135364.6d14   MAC100135364.6d13   MAC100135364.6d13 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>-</td> <td>0</td> <td>Add VLAN</td> <td></td>						-	0	Add VLAN	
Adapter #2 ////////////////////////////////////	Adapter #2 /   MAC: 00135364646133 /   Adapter #3 //   MAC: 00135364646134 /   Adapter #3 //   MAC: 00135364646137 /   MAC: 00135364646138 /   Adapter #3 //   MAC: 00135364646138 //   MAC: 0013536466138 //   MAC: 001353646138 //   MAC: 0013		Adapter #1			2				
Adapter #2 //   MAC: 0015319d1e41ed135   MAC: 0015319d1e41ed135   MAC: 0015319d1e41ed137   MAC: 0015319d1e41ed138   MAC: 0015319d1e41ed139   MAC: 0015319d1e41e4139   MAC: 0015319d1	Adapter #2 //   MAC: 001353d444d015 //   Add VLAN //   Adapter #3 //   MAC: 001353d444d015 //   MAC: 001353		MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:14					_		
Adapter #3       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 43       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 43       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 45       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 47       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 45       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 47       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 48       //       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 48       //       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         Adapter 48       //       //       0ff       Idd VLAN         DNS Servers       10:20:0.1       0ff       Idd VLAN       Idd VLAN         Domain Name       COX-Access       Idd VLAN       Idd VLAN       Idd VLAN         Captive Portal       Idd VLAN       Idd VLAN       Idd VLAN       Idd VLAN         Captive Portal Si PAddress (IPVNetmask)	Adapter #3 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd112       //       Add VLAN         Adapter #3 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd112       //       Off       Add VLAN         Adapter #6 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd118       //       Off       Add VLAN         Adapter #7 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd118       //       Off       Add VLAN         Adapter #7 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd118       //       Off       Add VLAN         Adapter #8 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd118       //       Off       Add VLAN         Adapter #8 MAC: 00135/sd44/sd118       //       Off       Add VLAN         DNS Servers       10.20.0.3       //       Add VLAN         Domain Name       COX-Access       Domain Name       USU0.0.219/253.255.255.0       Adapter #1 •         Host Name for Captive Portal (IP/Netmask)       10.20.0.219/253.255.255.0       Adapter #1 •       USU0.0.219/253.255.255.0       Adapter #1 •         Submit       Submit       Submit       Submit       USU0.0.219/253.255.255.0       USU0.0.219/253.255.255.0						Using brice for in addressing lettray		nove	
MAC 001351def4e6d136 ////////////////////////////////////	MAC: 001353/d44/d136 //   Adapter #4 //   MAC: 001353/d44/d138 //   Adapter #6 //   MAC: 001353/d44/d138 //   Adapter #6 //   MAC: 001353/d44/d138 //   Adapter #6 //   MAC: 001353/d44/d138 //   MAC: 001353/d44/d0138 //   <		Adapter #2 MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:15	/			Off	•	Add VLAN	
MAC; 00135:04646137       P       Image: Construction of the second of the seco	MAC 0013513dideided 317 V Add ULAN Adapter #5 MAC 001353dideided 318 V MAC 001353dideideided 318 V MAC 001353dideided		Adapter #3 MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:16	/			Off	•	Add VLAN	
MAC 0013304446018 V Addition of the mediation portal Addition of the mediation portal is IP Address (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) Addition of the mediation portal is IP Address (IP/Netmask) Submit Submi	MAC 1001353 de4ide1s MAC 1001553 de4ide1s		Adapter #4 MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:17	/			Off	•	Add VLAN	
MAC 00153 dir4isde19 MAC 00153 dir4isde19 MAC 00153 dir4isde119 MAC 0015	M4C 100 1153 dividide 19 2 Add VLAN M4C 100 1153 dividide 19 2 Add VLAN M4C 100 1153 divide 10 0 M		Adapter #5 MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:18	/			011	T	Add VLAN	
MAC: 001353/di446d1a / Adapter #3 / Adapter #1 * Submit	MAC 100 135 36 464 464 13   MAC 100 135 36 464 464 14   MAC 100 136 464 464 464 464 464 464 464 464 464 4		MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:19	/			Off	•	Add VLAN	
MAC '0015:50:64:64:15 MAC '0015:50:64:64:15 DNS Servers 10:20:0.3 Hostname C3X-Access Domain Name	MAC 00:151:0164:64:1b MAC 00:151:0164:64:1b DNS Servers 10:20:0:1 Hostname CX-Access Domain Name Lading Pages Host Name for Captive Portal I Host Name for Captive Portal I Host Name for Captive Portal I Host Name for Captive Portal I Captive Portal SI PAddress 10:20:0:219/255:255.255.0 Adapter #1 ▼ Remediation Portal'S IP Address I (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) Submit		MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:1a	/			Off	•	Add VLAN	
Hostname COX-Access Domain Name COX-Access Landing Pages Host Name for Captive Portal Host Name for Captive Portal Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) (IP/N	Hostname CdX-Access Domain Name CdX-Access Landing Pages Host Name for Captive Portal Host Name for Captive Portal Captive Portal's 1P Address (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) Submit		Adapter #8 MAC: 00:15:5d:64:6d:1b	/			Off	•	Add VLAN	
Domain Name         Landing Pages         Host Name for Captive Portal         Captive Portal's IP Address         (IP/Netmask)         (IP/Netmask)         Submit	Domain Name       Landing Pages       Host Name for Captive Portal       Host Name for Remediation Portal       Captive Portal's IP Address       (IP/Netmask)       (IP/Netmask)       Submit		DNS Servers	10.20.0.3						
Landing Pages Hoat Name for Captive Portal Host Name for Remediation Portal Captive Portal's I P Address (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask)	Landing Pages Host Name for Captive Portal Host Name for Remediation Portal Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (ISubmit)		Hostname	CGX-Access						
Host Name for Captive Portal Host Name for Remediation Portal Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) 10.20.0.219/255.255.20 Adapter #1 ▼ Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) Submit	Host Name for Captive Portal Host Name for Remediation Portal Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) Submit		Domain Name							
Host Name for Remediation Portal Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) Submit	Host Name for Remediation Portal Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) 10.20.0.219/255.255.0 Adapter #1 ▼ (IP/Netmask) Adapter #1 ▼ (IP/Netmask) Submit									_
Captive Portal's IP Address 10.20.0.219/255.255.0 Adapter #1  (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (IP/Netmask) (Submit)	Captive Portal's IP Address 10.20.0.219/255.255.25 (IP/Netmask) ID Address Adapter #1  Adapter #1  Adapter #1  Cuprocent Adapter #1				_					
(IP/Netmask) 10.00.0.19/255.255.0 Adapter #1 • Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask) Adapter #1 •	(IP/Netmask) 10-200./19/255.255.0 Adapter #1									
(LP/Netmask)	(IP/netmask)		(IP/Netmask) Remediation Portal's IP Address	10.20.0.219/255.255.255.0						
Static Routes Configure	Static Routes Configure		(IP/Netmask)	Submit	Aughter # 1					
			Static Routes						<u>0</u>	onfigure

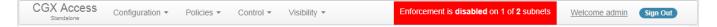
• If DHCP is configured, you should see IP address assignments to VLAN NICs

CGX Access	Configuration - Policies -	NAC - Visibility -				Enforcement is di	sabled on 2 of 2 su	ibnets Welcor	me admir	Sign Ou
Standalone	Policies *	NAC * VISIDIIITY *				Enforcement is di	subled on 2 or 2 se	VVerCol	ne aumi	
CGX Access Management	System Configuration: 🕉									
Agent Logging Server About	Date and Time: Mon May 18 9:12:12 IST 2020	Change								
Support Tools	Configure Networking:									
	Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	vLinks	Location	Configuration	1 State	VLAN
		10.20.0.200/255.255.255.0	10.20.0.2	100			vlan1 -	Managed IP	Ŷ	+
	Adapter #1	172.16.0.3/255.255.0.0	172.16.10.2	5003	2	No vLinks 🔻	vlan2 👻	DHCP V		
	MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:47						<u> </u>			
		192.168.10.104/255.255.255.0	192.168.10.2	5005	5	No vLinks •	vlan3 🔺	DHCP •	Ŷ	â
	Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:51	/		500			Add vlan3	• 10		+
	Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:5b	/		1000				Off •		+
	Adapter #4 MAC: 00:0c:29:02:82:65	/		1500			~	• 110		+
	DNS Servers	10.20.0.3								
	Hostname	cgx-access								
	Domain Name									
	Landing Pages									
	Support NAT'd	<b>e</b>								
	Host Name for Captive Portal									
	Captive Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)	10.20.0.221/255.255.255.0	Adapter #1 T No	one 🔹						
	Host Name for Remediation Portal									
	Remediation Portal's IP Address (IP/Netmask)		Adapter #1 V	ne 🔹						
	(arrestinger)	Submit								
	Static Routes									Configure
	Active Directory Domain Settin									
	CGX Access is not joined to Active	Directory								Configure

### **Enforcement Overview**

CGX Access uses ARP enforcement to restrict access with landing page redirection. The use of ARP enforcement greatly simplifies the deployment of CGX Access, as no network changes are required. ARP enforcement is also used to provide role-based control. To provide role-based control, CGX Access supports Access Groups, such as: restricted, limited, full-access, guest-access, consultant, and byod-access, etc. Each access group will have a configurable ACL to allow for the role-base control to be customized.

By default, subnets are placed in monitoring mode. It is recommended that the basic setup be completed, ACLs fine-tuned, integrations enabled, and white listing of devices be performed before enabling enforcement. When one or more subnets are in monitoring mode a status message is clearly visible across the top of the management console.



When ready, enforcement can be enabled in the Network Map. Enforcement can be delayed a few minutes when first enabled.

• Go to Control  $\rightarrow$  Network Map

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration *	Policies *	Control 👻	Visibility 👻		Enforcement	is disable	d on 1 of 2 subnets	Welcome admin	Sign O
Ne	etwork Map									
CG	X Access	Enabled								
Defa	ault configuratio	on (applied to	all subnets)	Show Configura	tion					
Sub	onets									
N	letwork		Last seen		Mode	•				
15	92.168.253.0/24		7 seconds a	ĝo	Enforce		•	Show Configurat	tion	
15	92.168.74.0/24		7 seconds a	ĝo	Monitor		•	Show Configurat	tion	
			Save (	Cancel Help						

#### Note: VRRP and HSRP Redundancy

For CGX Access to function properly, it needs to know the MAC/IP of routers/gateways on the subnet. In case VRRP or HSRP is used, it is required that router's virtual and actual MAC addresses be configured in the "routerlist" under subnet configuration in "Network Map".

- Go to Control  $\rightarrow$  Network Map
- Find the desired subnet and click on the "Show Configuration" link

## **Configuring Access Policies**

CGX Access includes default Access Groups. Customized Access Groups can also be configured. The defaults are:

- 1. restricted (with redirection to captive portal)
- 2. full-access (complete access)
- 3. guest-access (default is internet only)
- 4. byod-access (full access by default, but can be changed to limit access to internal resources)
- 5. consultant (full access by default, but can be changed to limit access to internal resources)
- 6. limited (full access by default but can be changed. This access group is recommended for remediation purposes, but can be used for a variety of use-cases)
- 7. Restrict-Azure Provides access to Microsoft while restricted to enable BYOD authentication using MS Azure credentials.
- 8. Restrict-Agent Restricts a device failing an agent audit to remediation resources only

Each access group has a customizable ACL associated with it. Every device joining a protected subnet will be assigned an access group. Restricted access is the default for new and untrusted devices.

Access Groups are assigned in a two-step process where conditions are first evaluated in the Automated Device Classification policy so a role can be assigned. Second, roles are then assigned one of access groups, depending on time and location.



#### **Automated Device Classification Policies**

In CGX Access GUI:

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Automated Device Classification.

CGX Access has a set of preconfigured device classification rules which will address typical requirements but can be modified to suit unique needs.

Automated Device Classification Policy

Classify devices based on their characteristics

Activate 🕑 Cancel Change

C Activate

#### Add Rule

Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met			
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted			
Has any of these flags: APT-Event, FP-mismatched, FW-Event, infected, IPS-Event, SIEM-Event	Set device role to restricted	0	ß	X
Has any of these flags: AV-off, AV-out-of-date, non-compliant, patch- failed, patch-pending	Set device role to non-compliant	Ø	Ø	X
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access	0	ß	X
Failed Agent Audit	Set device role to failed-agent-audit	0	ß	X
Passed Agent Audit	Set device role to full-access	0	G	×
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: byod	Set device role to BYOD	Ø	Ø	×
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: consultant	Set device role to consultant	0	Ø	X
Completed Guest or Device Registration	Set device role to guest	0	ß	×

Note: If none of the above conditions are met, a device will be assigned to the Untrusted Role

The classification rules are evaluated top-down. The device role is assigned by the first rule with all matching conditions.

Rules can be arranged in the desired order by dragging rules up or down in the list as required. If a device does not match all the conditions in any rule, then the device will be assigned the Untrusted Role which is restricted by default.

Individual rules can be enabled or disabled with a click of a button. Disabled rules will not be evaluated.

Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: consultant	Set device role to consultant	0	ß	X	:
Completed Guest or Device Registration	Set device role to guest	0	ß	) 🗙	:

If changes are made, click the "Activate" button for the changes to take effect.

### **Roles & Access Policy**

In CGX Access GUI:

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Roles & Access

CGX Access has a set of preconfigured Roles & Access policies which will address typical customer requirements but can be modified as necessary.

. .

#### Assign access group to devices based on roles, time and location

Activate 🛛 🕑 Cancel Change

New Rule	
restricted role:	
restricted during anytime from anywhere	
full-access role:	
full-access during anytime from anywhere	
untrusted role:	
restricted during anytime from anywhere	
guest role:	
guest-access during anytime from anywhere	· ·
BYOD role:	×
byod-access during anytime from anywhere	•
consultant role:	×
consultant during anytime from anywhere	· ·
non-compliant role:	×
limited during anytime from anywhere	·
failed-agent-audit role:	
restrict-agent during anytime from anywhere	·

In the default Roles & Access policies above, notice how both restricted role and untrusted role would be assigned the restricted access group. For management and reporting purposes, it can sometimes be helpful to setup multiple roles even if these different roles get the same access group.

It is also possible to set time and locations when access groups would be assigned. One example of how this would be helpful is with guest access. It is possible to configure the guest role to only be assigned during office hours and from approved locations. Time and locations must be first be defined to use this feature. To define time and locations go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Time/Location/List

If changes are made, click the "Activate" button for the changes to take effect.



#### Access Group (ACLs)

Each of the access groups has a customizable ACL that is associated with it.

In CGX Access GUI:

• Go to Control  $\rightarrow$  Access Group (ACLs)

#### Access Groups (ACLs) Policy

Rules to enforce NAC access groups

New Rule	
Access Group restricted	
Access Group full-access	
has complete access	
Access Group guest-access	
Access Group byod-access	
has complete access	
Access Group consultant	
has complete access	
Access Group limited	
Access Group restrict-Azure	
Access Group restrict-agent	

To make changes to any of the ACLs, click on the access group you would like to change, and edit the ACL in the dialog box.

Edit Action		×
Configure NAC rule	s for access group	Î
		I
Access group	restricted	I
Condition	Apply ACL 🔹	l
ACL rules	ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='UDP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==11698 DNSREDIRECT(CaptivePortal) DENY WHEN TRUE	
Color		•
	Save Cancel Help	]

The above restricted ACL allows DHCP traffic and NAC agent traffic on TCP port 11698. It will automatically redirect DNS traffic to the CGX Access landing page. All other traffic is denied.

🕻 Cancel Changes

#### **ACL Examples**

1) ALLOW WHEN TRUE or ALLOWALL Allows all the traffic.

2) DENY WHEN TRUE or DENYALL Blocks all the traffic.

3) ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==80 Allows HTTP traffic to flow.

4) ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==11698 Allows NAC agent (TCP 11698) traffic to flow

5) ALLOW WHEN (PROTO=='TCP') AND PORT==80 AND ADDR=='192.168.100.200' Allows HTTP traffic to the 192.168.100.200 IP Address.

6) ALLOW WHEN (PROTO=='UDP' OR PROTO=='TCP') AND PORT==21 AND ADDR=='192.168.0.0/24' Allows FTP traffic to the 192.168.0.0/24 subnet.

7) HTTPREDIRECT <u>http://company.com</u> WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND (PORT==80 OR PORT==443) Redirects all the HTTP traffic to '<u>http://company.com</u>' URL.

8) HTTPREDIRECT(CaptivePortal)

The above is a special truncated syntax for HTTPREDIRECT rule which supports CGX landing pages automatically. This redirection URL will automatically use the CGX Access Captive Portal IP.

8) DNSREDIRECT(CaptivePortal)

The above is a special truncated syntax for DNSREDIRECT rule which supports CGX landing pages automatically. DNS-reply packets be modified to automatically use the CGX Access Captive Portal IP.

9) ALLOWSITE("microsoft.com") This command allows both DNS replies and traffic to the Microsoft site. It should be placed above the DNSREDIRECT rule

10) ALLOWSUBSITE("microsoft.com")

This command allows both DNS replies and traffic to the Microsoft site and its subdomains. It should be placed above the DNSREDIRECT rule

#### 11) DNSREPLACE(CaptivePortal)

This command is useful for environments without DNS servers. Will reply to DNS requests with the CGX Access Captive Portal IP.

12) ALLOW WHEN (PROTO=='TCP' OR PROTO=='UDP') AND LOCALPORT==3389 Allows RDP (mstsc) access on restricted endpoint. LOCALPORT is used to specify port on restricted device. 13) ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND LOCALPORT==3389 AND LOCALADDR=='192.168.10.20'
Allows Remote desktop to only one restricted endpoint *192.168.10.20* from all other protected end points

14) ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND LOCALPORT==3389 AND REMOTEADDR=='192.168.10.0/24' Allow Remote desktop to restricted devices from subnet *192.168.10.0/24* 

15) ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND (PORT==20 OR PORT==21) AND ADDR=='10.20.0.5' Allow FTP from restricted devices to FTP server *10.20.0.5* 

#### ACL Syntax

Each ACL rule has the following syntax:

#### <ACTION> WHEN <CONDITION>

<ACTION> can be one of the followings:

- ALLOW Means the packet will be allowed to pass if <CONDITION> matches
- DENY Means the packet will be blocked if <CONDITION> matches
- HTTPREDIRECT <url>
   Means the packet will be modified with HTTP <url> redirection content inserted when
   <CONDITION> matches
- DNSREDIRECT <IP-address> Means the DNS-reply packet be modified with <IP-address> if <CONDITION> matches
- DNSALLOW Means the DNS-reply packet will be allowed to pass if <CONDITION> matches

#### <CONDITION> is a <SIMPLE-CONDITION>

or any combination of <SIMPLE-CONDITION> using parenthesis and AND|OR OPERATORs.

<SIMPLE-CONDITION> can be one of the followings:

- ETHTYPE <OPERATOR> <type> Check for packet Ethernet type, <type> can be one of these strings: IP, ARP
- DIRECTION <OPERATOR> <direction>
   Check for packet direction, <direction> can be one of these strings: IN, OUT Packets can be captured in both directions:
   IN direction means the packet flows from the protected to the rogue OUT direction means the packet flows from the rogue to the protected

- PROTO <OPERATOR> <proto>
   Check for IP protocol type. <proto> can be one of these strings: ICMP, TCP, UDP, IGMP
- LOCALPORT <OPERATOR> <no> Check for TCP/UDP port against the number <no> in the case of IP/TCP/UDP packet. This is always the port on restricted device.
- REMOTEPORT <OPERATOR> <no> Check for TCP/UDP port against the number <no> in the case of IP/TCP/UDP packet. This is the destination port for outgoing packet and source port for incoming packet.
- PORT <OPERATOR> <no>
   Check for TCP/UDP port against the number <no> in the case of IP/TCP/UDP packet.
   This is the destination port for outgoing packet and source port for incoming packet.
- LOCALADDR <OPERATOR> <addr\_or\_subnet> Check for IPv4 address or subnet against string <addr\_or\_subnet>. This is always the IP address of restricted device(s).
- REMOTEADDR <OPERATOR> <addr\_or\_subnet> Check for IPv4 address or subnet against string <addr\_or\_subnet>. This is the destination IP address for outgoing packet and source IP address for incoming packet
- ADDR <OPERATOR> <addr\_or\_subnet> The same as REMOTEADDR
- HOSTNAME <OPERATOR2> <site\_name> Check if DNS hostname inside DNS-reply packet matches <site\_name>
- TRUE This condition is always true
- FALSE This condition is always false

<**OPERATOR**> can be ==, != for strings and ==, !=, >, <, <=, >= for numbers. Also, ! prefix-OPERATOR can be used to negate the [SIMPLE-CONDITION], like this: !(PROTO=='TCP')

<addr\_or\_subnet> can contain IP-address range, like '192.168.0.1-192.168.0.100' All strings should be quoted using single-quotes: 'example'

# **Flagging Devices and Whitelisting**

In NAC deployments, it is a common requirement to grant access (whitelist) specific devices that are not normally registered by end-users. Typical examples include printers, network infrastructure, VoIP phones and other types of devices.

An easy way to grant access is by using the concept of Flagging. The CGX Access solution supports the ability for administrators to create and set flags on specific devices. Then using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be granted full-access, blacklisted or assigned some other access.

By default, devices with any of these flags: network-infrastructure, router, switch, AD-Managed, AV-Managed, managed-device, full-access, and printer, will automatically be granted full-access. This list can be modified to address unique requirements.

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	🕑 Cancel	l Char	nges
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: APT-Event, FP-mismatched, FW-Event, infected, IPS-Event, SIEM-Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	X
Has any of these flags: AV-off, AV-out-of-date, non-compliant, patch- failed, patch-pending	Set device role to non-compliant		0	G	X
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	C	X
Failed Agent Audit	Set device role to failed-agent-audit		Ø	ß	X
Passed Agent Audit	Set device role to full-access		0	G	X
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: byod	Set device role to BYOD		0	C	<b>X</b>
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: consultant	Set device role to consultant		0	G	X
Completed Guest or Device Registration	Set device role to guest		Ø	ß	) 🗙

Note: If none of the above conditions are met, a device will be assigned to the Untrusted Role

CGX Access automates the process of flagging. The CGX Access solution will automatically flag a device based on the results of device profiling. If CGX Access detects that a device is a printer, it will flag the device as a printer. If using the default Automated Device Classification policy, the printer would then be granted full-access. The same is true for network infrastructure like switches and routers.

#### Flags

CGX Access supports two types of flags, User Defined Flags and Reserved Flags. User Defined Flags can be created and changed as required. The Reserved Flags are set automatically by the CGX Access device profiling system and cannot be deleted.

•	Go to Configuration $\rightarrow$	General Settings -	Click on "Names	Used by Policies":

-				
Names Used by Po	licies Note: All names are case sens			
Access Groups(ACLs)	byod-access consultant excluded full-access guest-access limited restrict-agent restrict-Azure restricted	AD/LDAP User Groups		ß
D <b>evice Flags</b> User Defined Flags	consultant	Reserved Flags	AD-managed app-control-off	<u>^</u>
			APT-Event arp-scan-ignoring AV-Config AV-managed AV-off	•

These two types of flags can be leveraged to address many unique requirements. For example, if printers need to be physically checked before access is granted. Then a policy can be set to send an alert to the administrator when a device was automatically flagged as a printer shows up on the network. Once the printer has been inspected, the administrator can then assign a User Defined Flag, i.e., approved-printer, which would allow it access to the network.

#### **Setting Flags**

To manually assign flags to devices via the Device Manager.

• Go to Visibility  $\rightarrow$  Device Manager

If the list of devices is long, show the Report Filters at the top of the screen to narrow down the results.

Setting the flags manually can be done for one or more devices in a few steps.

- 1. Select the device(s) where a flag is desired
- 2. Select the action  $\rightarrow$  Add flag to selected device(s)  $\rightarrow$  Select Flag
- 3. Confirm flag is Permanent or select an expiration period
- 4. Click "Apply to selected devices"

- 11	I Unique Device	e la chanteu	., <i>30</i> ,											Refresh Export	
	ver Devices Active i w Report Filter	n: Past 5 M	inutes 2					3	4						
	al # of Devices: 4	~		ed vent	re	~	Perman	nent 🗸	Apply to selected de	evices dd a Scheduled I	Report Devi	ces per Page	Page	e 1 of 1. First << [1]	551
	⊥ MAC	Hostname	No-A	/ ompliant				Vendor	Flags	IP Address	Last Seen	Comment	Access	Grant Access	(
1		nootilaino	patch	managed					/ Lists	in Fladicoo		Connort	Status	Grantricocoo	`
		c6793554255					x OS	VMware, Inc.	virtual	10.160.0.223	2021-12-31 14:43:54		•	ON OFF Auto	
1	00:50:56:05:F3:77	00793334233		pending											8
)	00:50:56:05:F3:77	c7543585455	fu patch printe roami router Scan-	stale ng detected			dows Server S Standard	VMware, Inc.	network-infrastructure webserver virtual AD- managed whitelist	10.160.0.200	2021-12-31 14:44:35	AD Server	•	ON OFF Auto	
			fu patch roami fu scan- Sense SIEM	stale ng detected pr-out-of-date Event device				VMware,	webserver virtual AD- managed	10.160.0.200		AD Server	•		

#### Whitelist \ Blacklist \ Excludelist

CGX Access also supports adding a device(s) to a manual whitelist, blacklist or exclude-list.

- Whitelist Device will always have Full Access and be protected, regardless of policy.
- Blacklist Device will always be Restricted, regardless of policy
- Excludelist Device is ignored by EasyNAC. It will not be restricted or protected from rogue devices. Excluded devices do not consume a license.

The examples below will assume whitelisting, but blacklist and exclude-list works the same way.

In the Network Map, devices can be added by MAC Address or IP Address to the global whitelist or to a whitelist specific to a subnet. If entered into the Default Configuration, the whitelisting would be configured for all subnets. When adding devices to the Default Configuration, it's best to use MAC addresses, so it can be relevant to all subnets.

• Go to Control  $\rightarrow$  Network Map  $\rightarrow$  Show Configuration

Network Map				
CGX Access	abled			
Default configuration (ap	plied to all subnets) Hide Configu	ration		
Routerlist	Whitelist	Blacklist	Excludelist	
Eg: 10.2.0.1 08:00:27:CA:AB:6E	00:0C:29:74:ED:11 00:0C:29:4C:8C:B1	Eg: 10.2.0.200 08:00:27:AA:00:CA	Eg: 10.2.0.22 08:00:27:AA:00:CA	•
	-	-	•	-

The Network Map can also be used to configure IP addresses or MAC addresses that should only be whitelisted on specific subnets.

- Go to Control  $\rightarrow$  Network Map
- Find the desired subnet and click on the "Show Configuration" link

Subnets

Network	Last seen	Mode	Action
192.168.253.0/24	18 seconds ago	Enforce •	Show Configuration

Once the "Show Configuration" link has been clicked, the view will expand to show the Whitelist box specific to this subnet. Both IP Addresses and MAC Addresses can be added.

Subnets							
Network		Last seen		Mode 💌			
192.168.253.0/24		15 seconds ago		Enforce	¥	Hide Configuration	
Routerlist		Whitelist		Blacklist		Excludelist	
Eg: 10.2.0.1 08:00:27:CA:AB:6E	*	Eg: 10.2.0.11 08:00:27:CA:00:EE	•	Eg: 10.2.0.200 08:00:27:AA:00:CA	•	Eg: 10.2.0.200 08:00:27:AA:00:CA	•
	-		-		-		-

#### Adding Devices to the Whitelist or Blacklist

For quick additions to the Whitelist or Blacklist you can click the ON | OFF controls in the Device Manager. ON is the technical equivalent of being on the Whitelist, while OFF is the equivalent of being on the Blacklist. Auto means access is set automatically following the policies defined under Automated Device Classification.



When you click the ON button you will be given the option to select an expiration period. Permanent is the default value.

F	Add White	list				
0	Permanent Permanent	~	~	×		
	1-hour 4-hours 8-hours		N OFF	Auto	8	
D Se	1-day 2-days 7-days 30-days	0	N OFF	Auto	8	

When adding multiple devices to the whitelist it can be convenient to add devices via the Device Manager.

- 1. Select the device(s) to be whitelisted
- 2. Select the action  $\rightarrow$  Add to list  $\rightarrow$  Select whitelist
- 3. Confirm the list is Permanent or select an expiration period
- 4. Click "Apply to selected devices"

	l Unique Device											Updated a	t Fri Dec 31 2021 1	6:12:
hov	er Devices Active in w Report Filter d to list	n: Past 5 M	linutes 2 Select Li	st		✓ Permar	<b>3</b> nent ∽	4 Apply to selected de	vices					
ota	al # of Devices: 4 1	l	whitelist blacklist routerlist excludel					Ad	d a Scheduled I	Report Devi	ces per Page	100 Pag	e 1 of 1. First << [1]	>> La
5	МАС	Hostname	Access Group	Roles	Location	os	Vendor	Flags / Lists	IP Address	Last Seen	Comment	Access Status	Grant Access	e
- 1	00:50:56:05:F3:77	c6793554255	restricted	untrusted	Cloud demo	Linux OS	VMware, Inc.	virtual	10.160.0.223	2021-12-31 16:10:57		•	ON OFF Auto	Ŗ
2														
	00:50:56:0C:EA:32	c7543585455	full-access	full- access	Cloud demo	Windows Server 2016 Standard	VMware, Inc.	network-infrastructure webserver virtual AD- managed	10.160.0.200	2021-12-31 16:12:01	AD Server	•	ON OFF Auto	
2	00:50:56:0C:EA:32 00:50:56:87:EC:AA	c7543585455	full-access					webserver virtual AD-	10.160.0.200		AD Server	•	ON OFF Auto	

**Note:** Devices that are in the whitelist will be shown as ON. Devices in the blacklist will be shown as OFF. Their respective list will also be shown in the Flags / Lists column.

#### The Excludelist

Devices added to the Exclude list will be completely unprotected by the Easy NAC solution. Its typical use would be for handling a compatibility issue. Issues are rare, but one known example is with the Cisco wireless AP. If the AP is not excluded, it would cause DHCP to fail.

The Exclude list feature can also be used for short-term license management. Devices added to the Excludelist do not consume a license, so if an organization is exceeding the license, this could be a short-term way to manage the issue. This feature should be used with care, as excluded devices will also not be protected from rogue, non-compliant or infected devices.

**Note:** If the device license is exceeded by more than 10%, new devices joining the network would be automatically added to this Excludelist and would therefore not be enforced.

#### The Routerlist

The Routerlist is used to add non-default gateways to the settings. It commonly used if a customer is using VRRP or HSRP. With redundant gateways, it is required that router's virtual and actual MAC addresses be added in the "routerlist" for enforcement to work properly.

# **Device Discovery**

Easy NAC use a combination of active and passive detection mechanisms to discover new endpoints when they join the network.

When a new DHCP based endpoint connects to the network for example, it will send out a DHCP DISCOVER request. This broadcast packet will be seen by endpoints on the same subnet, including the CGX Access appliance. Once an IP address is assigned by your DHCP server, it will need to send out ARP requests on the network which is similar to the process described below in the static IP address devices.

Statically addressed endpoints will send out layer-2 ARP requests, which are broadcast traffic, to locate endpoints and routers with whom they wish to communicate. CGX Access, being in the same broadcast domain, would be able to pick up the ARP request packets and immediately detect newly joined network devices. CGX Access will also periodically scan the network to detect systems that are stealthy connected to the network but without any DHCP nor ARP request.

# **Device Profiling**

Once CGX Access detects a new endpoint on the network, it will profile the device to determine which operation system (OS) it is running, and which network ports are open by using both active and passive profiling techniques. Active Profiling includes network scanning such as NMAP, UPnP, NBTScan which would detect an endpoint's OS, its open ports and grab the web server banner when it is detected on an endpoint.

Passive Profiling is accomplished by detecting the DHCP DISCOVER request broadcast packets and comparing them to the internal DHCP fingerprinting records to match up with the OS's unique identifier.

Note: Device Profiling information is also obtained from optional agents or Integration modules such as Active Directory or End Point Protection software.

#### **DHCP** Profiling

DHCP Profiling is enabled by default, and CGX Access maintains an internal database for common enduser operating systems such as Windows, Mac OSX, iOS, Android, and Linux.

For DHCP profiling of IOT devices, it's recommended to leverage Fingerbank, a cloud-based DHCP database of 35,000+ devices, which greatly enhances the accurate profiling of IOT devices.

#### Fingerbank

The Fingerbank Cloud API is operated by Inverse Inc., based in Canada. Easy NAC customers can leverage this cloud API for DHCP profiling of devices. Inverse allows companies to register for a free API license for up to 600 queries per hour. To register an account please visit:

https://api.fingerbank.org/users/register

To add this API to CGX-Access:

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings
- Click on Device Profiler and select Fingerbank tab

lit Setting		
evice Profiler		
NMAP scan Finger	bank UPnP scan Web scan SNMP scan Fingerprint	
API Key	<ul> <li>Enable Fingerbank</li> <li>Use the built-in DHCP profiling for typical end-user computing devices.</li> <li>Recommended to maximize the free API license</li> </ul>	

- Paste the API key and Click the Test Connection
- If successful, click Save.

**Note:** It's recommended to use Easy NAC's built-in DHCP profiling for typical end-user computing devices. This would save the free API queries for IoT devices, where it's needed.

#### **NMAP** Profiling

NMAP Profiling is enabled by default, and is used for both profiling of devices and detection of open ports. NMAP profiling is performed every 24 hours, which is the recommend frequency. NMAP scanning is optional and can be disabled. To review or make changes to the NMAP default settings:

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings
- Click on Device Profiler and select NMAP scan

NMAP scan Finge	rbank	UPnP scan	Web scan	SNMP scan	Fingerprint			
	🗷 Enab	le NMAP Sca	n					
Rescan Interval (Hours)			2	4				
Scan Mode	Scan 1	100 well-knov	wn ports	Ŧ				
Service Version	Don't o	detect service	e version	•				
	- Look	un Hostnam	o from TD add					
Max Simultaneous	Cook	up Hostnam	e from IP addı	ress				
Max Simultaneous Devices per Scan	Look		e from IP addı	ress				
Devices per Scan IP Ranges to Exclude	e.g. 10	6	0.255	ress				
Devices per Scan	e.g. 10	6 .0.0.1-10.0.0	0.255	ress				
Devices per Scan IP Ranges to Exclude	e.g. 10 20.0.0.	6 .0.0.1-10.0.0	0.255	ress				
Devices per Scan IP Ranges to Exclude	e.g. 10 20.0.0.	6 .0.0.1-10.0.0	0.255		excluded ports se			

**Note:** NMAP scan be disabled entirely or on a subnet-by-subnet basis. To disable on specific subnet, go to:

- Go to Control  $\rightarrow$  Network Map
- Find the desired subnet and click on the "Show Configuration" link

EX Access Enabling	ed to all subnets) Show Configura	ation	
bnets	cu to all subnets) Show Configura	alon -	
Network	Last seen	Mode 💌	
92.168.253.0/24	13 seconds ago	Monitor	Hide Configuration
Routerlist	Whitelist	Blacklist	Excludelist
Eg: 10.2.0.1 08:00:27:CA:AB:6E	Eg: 10.2.0.11 08:00:27:CA:00:EE	Eg: 10.2.0.200 08:00:27:AA:00:CA	Eg: 10.2.0.200 08:00:27:AA:00:CA
Devices to protect in addition	on to routers 🕑 Whitelist	<ul> <li>All devices with full access</li> </ul>	35

• Select Yes on the "Disable NMAP Scanning", and it will be disabled on this subnet only.

#### **UPNP Profiling**

UPnP Profiling is enabled by default, and can be a source of Operating System and hostname information from IoT devices enabled for UPnP. UPnP scanning is light weight and is performed every ~5 minutes. To review or make changes to the UPnP default settings:

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings
- Click on Device Profiler and select UPnP scan

dit Setting					
evice Profiler					
NMAP scan Finger	bank UPnP scan	Web scan	SNMP scan	Fingerprint	
	Enable UPnP Scan				
Rescan Interval (Seconds)		260			
Detect Device Description	All device types but	media rend 🔻			
Detect Device's Host Name	All device types but	Android 🔹 🔻			

#### **SNMP Scan**

SNMP scanning is disabled by default. When enabled, SNMP would query the network devices for the switch and port a device is connected to. This information can then be used to enhance our ability to detect and prevent <u>MAC spoofing</u>.

Supported Brands: Cisco, Aruba, Juniper, F5, HP, Palo Alto, SonicWALL, TP-Link, Fortinet, and VMware.

To enable and configure SNMP Scan settings:

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings
- Click on Device Profiler and select SNMP scan

	ler						
NMAP scan	Fingerbank	UPnP scan	Web scan	SNMP scan	Fingerprint		
EARLY	RELEASE	Enable SNMP Sca	an				
Switches or				Resca	n Interval(secs)	900	
					SNMP Trap Port	162	
	MPV2c RO ity Strings	public readonly		SNMP T	rap Community	public	
SNMPv3	Username				String		
SNMPv3 Sec	urity Level			v			

# **Configuring Device Profiler Policies**

Easy NAC collects a lot of profiling information about devices. It can be helpful to use this information to create custom device profiling policies to automate the flagging of devices.

#### **Device Detail Data**

To review the information collected about a device:

- Open Device Manager
- Click on MAC address of the device

MAC	Hostname	Access Group	Roles	Location	OS	Vendor	Flags / Lists	IP Address	Last Seen	Comment	Access Status	Grant Access	ß
00:50:56:05:F3:77	c6793554255	restricted	untrusted	Cloud demo	Linux OS	VMware, Inc.	virtual	10.160.0.223	2022-01-03 10:19:27		•		
00:50:56:0C:EA:32	c7543585455	full-access	full-access	Cloud demo	Windows Server 2016 Standard	VMware, Inc.	network-infrastructure webserver virtual AD- managed AV-managed whitelist	10.160.0.200	2022-01-03 10:19:27	AD Server	•		8
00:50:56:87:9B:97		full-access	full-access	Cloud demo	Fortinet FortiGate 100D firewall	VMware, Inc.	network-infrastructure virtual routerlist	10.160.0.1	2022-01-03 10:19:27		•	ON OFF 🏎	8
00:50:56 AF A3 D8	desktop- 6fjp5su	limited	non- compliant	Cloud demo	Windows 10 Enterprise	VMware, Inc.	virtual AD-managed AV- managed AV-off	10.160.0.222	2022-01-03 10:19:27	AD Client	•		6

Genera	al	NMAP DHO	CP Web Sophos AD State DPM DM
хт			
Startino	Nman	7 92 (https:/	/nmap.org ) at 2022-01-03 10:14 HKT
-	-	rt for 10.160.	
lost is	up (0.	00026s latency	1).
		closed top po	
		SERVICE	
25/tcp	open	smtp	MailEnable smptd 10.31
-	-	-	Simple DNS Plus
80/tcp	open	http	Microsoft IIS httpd 10.0
-	-	header: Micros	-
88/tcp	open	kerberos-sec	Microsoft Windows Kerberos (server time: 2021-12-10 09:28:012)
- 110/tcp	open	pop3	MailEnable POP3 Server
	open	marpe	Microsoft Windows RPC
135/tcp			
	open	netbios-ssn	Microsoft Windows netbios-ssn
139/tcp	-		Microsoft Windows netblos-ssn MailEnable imapd
139/tcp 143/tcp	open	imap	MailEnable imapd
139/tep 143/tep 389/tep	open open	imap	MailEnable imapd Microsoft Windows Active Directory LDAP (Domain: easynac.demo,
139/tep 143/tep 389/tep Site: De	open open fault-	imap ldap First-Site-Nam	MailEnable imapd Microsoft Windows Active Directory LDAP (Domain: easynac.demo, we)
139/tcp 143/tcp 389/tcp Site: De 445/tcp	open open fault-	imap ldap First-Site-Nam	MailEnable imapd Microsoft Windows Active Directory LDAP (Domain: easynac.demo, we)
139/tcp 143/tcp 389/tcp Site: De 445/tcp SYNAC)	open open fault- open	imap ldap First-Site-Nam	MailEnable imapd Microsoft Windows Active Directory LDAP (Domain: easynac.demo,

**Tip:** The information contained in the Device Detail Data can be useful when creating custom Device Profiling Policies.

#### **Device Profiling Policies**

In CGX Access GUI:

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Device Profiler

Device Profiling Policy				
Mark devices based on profiling data		C Activate Policies	C Restor	re Policies
Add Rule				
Conditions	Actions			
Web data matches 'Apache or Microsoft-IIS'	Flag the device as 'webserver'		0	Ø
Device vendor matches 'Microsoft Hyper-V or VMWare'	Flag the device as 'virtual'		Ø	G
Device's NMAP scan data contains 'OS CPE.*laserjet'	Flag the device as 'printer'		Ø	©.
Device type matches 'Switch or Router'	Flag the device as 'network-infrastructure'		Ø	G
Check if the port is open - Port: '5060', protocol: 'tcp	Flag the device as 'VoIP'		0	G

CGX Access has a few of preconfigured Device Profiling Policies, these can be disabled, but modified.

• Click <u>Add Rule</u> to create a custom profiling rule

Device Profiling Policy				
Back			C Activate Policies	C Restore Polic
Conditions	Add			
Actions	Add			

• Click <u>Add</u> to create one or more Conditions

Device	select an operation	
Check Device Type		
Check Dhcp Data		
Device Flag		
Check Host Name		
Check MAC Address		
Check Vendor		
Check NMAP Scan		
Device OS		
Check Network Port		
Check Radius Data		

• Click <u>Add</u> to create one or more Actions

Device Profiling Policy	
Back	
Conditions	Add
Device vendor matches 'Tp-Link Technologies Co., Ltd.'	×
Check if the port is open - Port: '554', protocol: 'tcp	×
Check if the port is open - Port: '2020', protocol: 'tcp	×
Actions	Add

Clear Device Flags Create event	Select Flag to Set		
Create event	Select Flag to Set		
	Select Play to Set	consultant	*
Flag Device		consultant	<b>^</b>
Set Operating System		AD-managed app-control-off	
Notify		APT-Event arp-scan-ignoring AV-managed AV-off	
		AV-offline AV-out-of-date	

• Click "Activate Policies"

Add
×
×
×
Add
×

Devices matching the all three conditions will be Flagged as CCTV. Then adjusting the <u>Automated Device Classification Policy</u>, these devices can be assigned full access to the network.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	Cance	Char	nges
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: APT-Event, FP-mismatched, FW-Event, infected IPS-Event, SIEM-Event	d, Set device role to restricted		0	C	×
Has any of these flags: AV-off, AV-out-of-date, non-compliant, patch- failed, patch-pending	Set device role to non-compliant		0	G	X
Has any of these flags: switch, router, printer, network-infrastructure, managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD-managed, CCTV	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×
Failed Agent Audit	Set device role to failed-agent-audit		Ø	C	×
Passed Agent Audit	Set device role to full-access		Ø	ß	×
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: byod	Set device role to BYOD		Ø	ß	×
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: consultant	Set device role to consultant		0	ß	×
Completed Guest or Device Registration	Set device role to quest		0	ß	×

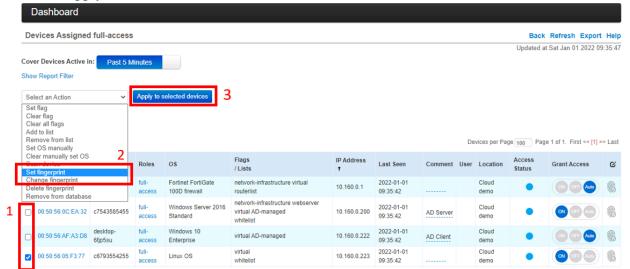
# **Anti-spoofing Protection**

When using MAC-based authentication on the network, MAC address spoofing can be a concern, as it is easy to change a MAC address. CGX Access provides a fingerprint feature to protect against MAC address spoofing. All devices on the network are profiled for their MAC address, IP, Operating System, Hostname, and open ports). This information can then be used to set a unique fingerprint for the device. Once a fingerprint has been set, the device(s) will be protected from spoofing. For example, a printer can include the host name and Embedded/IoT/Linux as its OS type. If a Windows or Apple device tries to spoof its MAC address, the spoof would be detected, and the device can be restricted.

#### **Setting Fingerprints**

Fingerprints can be set using the Device Manager

- 1. Select the device or devices where a fingerprint is desired
- 2. Select the Action  $\rightarrow$  Set fingerprint
- 3. Click "Apply to selected devices"



• 4. Confirm details to be included in the fingerprint  $\rightarrow$  Save

Set device's fir	ngerprint	×
Check all the fi	elds to be included in the fingerprint	-
MAC Address		l
4	Embedded/IoT/Linux 🗸	l
Ports		
<ul><li>□ Switch Port</li><li>✓ Open Port</li></ul>	tcp:22	l
Multi-Factor Au	Ithentication	
<ul> <li>User Name</li> <li>Agent serial num</li> </ul>	ıber	•
	Cancel Save	

**Note:** To include Switch Port info in the fingerprint, SNMP scanning or the <u>RADIUS Proxy</u> feature needs to be configured.

Devices with set fingerprints will have a blue fingerprint icon displayed in the Device Manager. Clicking on the fingerprint will show the information included in its unique fingerprint.

MAC	Hostname	Roles	OS	Flags / Lists	IP Address †	Last Seen	Comment	User	Location	Access Status	Grant Access	ß
00:50:56:87:85:70		full- access	Fortinet FortiGate 100D firewall	network-infrastructure virtual	10.160.0.1	2022-01-01 10:10:12			Cloud demo	Fingerprint Detail	×	8
00:50:56:0C:EA:32	c7543585455	full- access	Windows Server 2016 Standard	network-infrastructure webserver virtual AD-managed whitelist	10.160.0.200	2022-01-01 10:09:41	AD Server		Cloud demo	+ OPENPORT : tcp: + HOSTNAME : C67 + MAC : 00:50:56: + OS : linux,iot	93554255	8
00:50:56:AF:A3:D8	desktop- 6fjp5su	full- access	Windows 10 Enterprise	virtual AD-managed	10.160.0.222	2022-01-01 10:09:41	AD Client		Cloud demo	Change	Delete Close	8
00:50:56:05:F3:77	c6793554255	full- access	Linux OS	virtual whitelist	10.160.0.223	2022-01-01 10:09:41			Cloud demo	•		

Tip: The gray fingerprint icon can also be clicked to quickly set or change a fingerprint.

#### **MAC Spoofing Detection**

Once a fingerprint has been set, any changes in the fingerprint details will causes a mismatch and actions can be taken. In the example below, a Windows XP device had spoofed the MAC address of the printer. Since the Operating System and the host name didn't match the fingerprint. The fingerprint icon was changed to red and device was assigned a FP- mismatched flag so actions can be taken.

MAC	Hostname	Access Group	Roles	Location	os	Flags / Lists	IP Addres	55	Last Seen	Access Status	Grant Access		
00:0C:29:4C:8C:B1	WIN- EH9KPK2TKSH	full-access	full- access		Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise 7601 Service Pack 1	network-infrastructure webserver virtual	192.168.2	53.100	2018-01-14 21:23:38	٠		6	
38:59:F9:6F:AC:37	Sales-Mike	restricted	restricted		Microsoft Windows XP	printer FP-mismatched	192.168.	Fing	erprint De	tail	×		D
00:0C:29:48:70:2E	MANAGED01	full-access	full- access		Windows 7 Professional	virtual AD-managed	192.168.	+ M/	S : others AC : 38:59:1			8	D
00:0C:29:51:DB:AA	SALES-MIKE	restricted	untrusted		Windows XP	virtual	192.168.	Misr	DSTNAME : matched va	lues:	F96FAC37	)	D
C0:25:E9:03:7E:B0		full-access	full- access		Linux 2.6.23 - 2.6.38	network-infrastructure webserver	192.168.		S : windows DSTNAME :		e	8	Đ
										hange De	elete Close		
										lange De			

Using Policies  $\rightarrow$  Automated Device Classification rules, actions can be taken when a FP-mismatched is detected. The policy below shows the device will be assigned a restricted role and alerts will be sent to the network administrators.

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	🕑 Cano	el Cha	nges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: FP-mismatched	Set device role to High-Risk Send Email and SMS to Second Admin2, Admin		e	ß	×
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		େ	Ø	X

#### **Fingerprint Rescan Interval**

Some device profiling features, like NMAP scanning are run with a default 24-hour frequency. For faster fingerprint mismatch detection, a faster rescan interval can be set. It's recommended to only increase the rescan interval for devices with Fingerprints.

In CGX Access GUI:

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings  $\rightarrow$  Device Profiler
- Select Fingerprint tab

General Settings		
Edit Setting		×
Device Profiler		
NMAP scan Fingerbank	UPnP scan Web scan SNMP scan Fingerprint	
✓ E Rescan Interval(secs)	nable Rescanning Devices with Fingerprint	

Tip: using SNMP scanning or <u>Radius Proxy</u> feature will also increase the speed of mismatch detections.

#### **Multi-Factor Authentication**

The Fingerprinting feature can also provide 2FA (Something you know (password) and something you have a (specific device). User credentials will be captured with the use of agents, WMI or 802.1x, and then associated with a specific device.

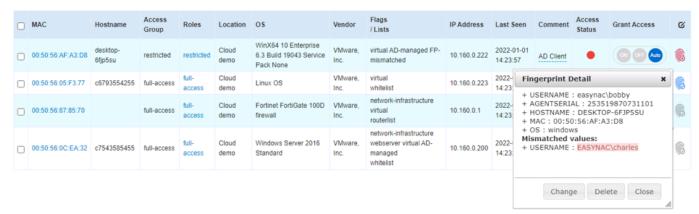
Set device's fingerprint	
Check all the fields to be in	ncluded in the fingerprint
MAC Address	
IP Address	
🗸 OS	Windows 🗸
✓ Hostname	
Ports	
Switch Port	
🗌 Open Port	
Multi-Factor Authentication	n
🗸 User Name	
🗸 Agent serial number	
	easynac\bobby
	easynac\charles
	Cancel Save

- Click "User Name" and then select the from a list of available accounts. Up to 5 accounts can be included in a Fingerprint.
- If using agents, click "Agent Serial number"; If it can't be selected then the device doesn't have and agent installed.
- Save Changes to Fingerprint

**Note:** If you are unable to select "User Name" then no user names have been detected for this device. User names are sourced from the use of Agents, WMI, or 802.1x authentication when using the Radius Proxy feature.

#### **Mismatched Authentication**

Once a fingerprint has been set, any changes in the fingerprint details will causes a mismatch and actions can be taken. In the example below, Bobby was the authorized Username, but the account Charles was logged into device. Since there was an authentication mismatch, the fingerprint icon was changed to red and device was assigned a FP- mismatched flag so actions can be taken.



If both Bobby and Charles are authorized users, the change button could be clicked, and both usernames could be added to the fingerprint.

Change device's fingerprint	×
Check all the fields to be incl	uded in the fingerprint
MAC Address	
IP Address	
✓ OS	Windows 🗸
✓ Hostname	
Ports	
Switch Port	
🗌 Open Port	
Multi-Factor Authentication	
🗸 User Name	easynac\bobby easynac\charles
🗸 Agent serial number	
	Cancel Save

#### **Rogue DHCP Server Detection**

With personal Wi-Fi routers and misconfigured virtual machines, it is not uncommon for rogue DHCP servers to show up on the network. CGX Access can be configured to detect rogue DHCP servers, so they can be quickly identified and removed from the network.

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings.
- Click on Servers:
- Under DHCP Servers, input the IP addresses of all the authorized DHCP servers on the network.
- Select "Detect rogue DHCP servers"

Active Directory Servers	RADIUS Server	Radius Clients	DHCP Servers	Mail Servers	Web Proxy Server	SMS Gateway
WhatsApp Provider						
	Detect Rogue DH	HCP Servers				
IP Addresses of	192.168.253.100					
Authorized DHCP	192.168.253.101					
Servers						

Note: Any DHCP server not on the authorized IP list will be flagged as DHCP-rogue.

Using Policies  $\rightarrow$  Automated Device Classification, actions can be taken when DHCP-rogue is detected. The policy below shows the device will be assigned a restricted role and alerts will be sent to the network administrators.

Automated Device Classification Policy						
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	C Cano	cel Ch	iange	x
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met					
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted					
Has any of these flags: DHCP-rogue	Set device role to restricted Send Email and SMS to Second Admin2, Admin			9 0	8	×
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		G	9 0	5	×

# Time \ Location \ List Policies

It can be useful to use time, location or lists of IP addresses to help determine what access should be granted. For example, the default settings will allow guests to access the internet at any time, and from any part of the network. If we wanted to limit where and when they can access the internet, we can use the Location and Time Policies.

#### **Location Policy**

**Option 1:** Location names can be set by adapter or VLAN under Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance settings

Configure Networking:							
Adapters	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	Location	Configuration State	VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:70	192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	100		•	Managed IP	+
Adapter #2 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:7a	192.168.20.220/255.255.255.0	192.168.20.1			HQ-IT dept 🔻	Static IP	+
Adapter #3 MAC: 00:0c:29:22:93:84	/				Ť	Off	+

Option 2: Define location names by IP range.

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Time/Location/List and click on Location-policy.

Edit Action		×
Set Device's Locati	on	
Location name	Guest WiFi	
Device's IP within these ranges One per line (e.g. 192.168.39.1 - 192.168.39.255)	192.168.254.1-192.168.254 .254	

Location definitions can be based on IP addresses. Once the Location name has been saved, it can now be added as a condition for Guest Access in the Roles & Access policy.

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Roles & Access

Edit Action			×
Define Role and Ass	sign Access		_
Role Name	guest		
Color	•		
Grant access group	guest-access	T	
during	anytime	¥	
from	Guest WIFI	¥	
Grant access group	restricted	¥	
during	anytime	¥	
from	anywhere	•	
Grant access group		T	
		Save Cancel Help	

The above Roles & Access policy now has two possible Access Groups for for guests. If on the Guest WIFI access is granted, if at any other location, access is restricted. If we wanted to limited access to office hours, we could set a third condition based on time.

#### **Time Policy**

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Time/Location/List and click on Time-policy.

Time definitions can be adjusted, or new ones created. Below is an example of how work hours might be defined:

Edit Action	×
Set Time Period	
Time period name	work hours (8-6)
Date Requirement	Fall within any of the dates below <b>V</b>
Dates (one per line)	
	e.g. mm/dd, mm/dd/yy, mm/dd/yyyy, mm/dd - mm/dd/yy
Time Requirement	Fall within any of the hours below $~~ \blacksquare$
Days of week and hours(one per line)	M-F 8:00-18:00
	e.g. M-Th 9:00-12:00, 13:00-17:00. In 24-hour format, one per line. Leave hours empty to indicate 24 hours
	'From' day must be earlier than 'To' day (i.e.F-M not allowed)
	Save Cancel Help

Once the Time Period name has been saved, it can now be added as a condition in the Role & Access policy.

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Roles & Access

Edit Action			×	
Define Role and Assign Access				
Role Name	guest			
Color	•			
Grant access group	guest-access	•		
during	work hours (8-6)	¥	]	
from	Guest WIFI	٣		
Grant access group	restricted	*		
during	anytime	•		
from	anywhere	¥		
Grant access group		Ŧ		
	s	ave Cano	cel Help	

The above Role & Access policy now has both time and location conditions for guest access to be granted.

#### **Device-Lists Policy**

Device-Lists Policies provides an easy method to define a list of IP addresses or MAC addresses to help determine what access should be granted. It is commonly used to define a group of IP address that needs to be whitelisted.

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Time/Location/List and click on Device-lists.

Device Lists can be adjusted, or new ones created. Below is an example of how to create a device list for a server farm using IP addresses:

Define IP Address List	Define IP Address I	ist
Define MAC Address List		
	List name	Server Farm
	IP addresses or	10.0.0.100-10.0.0.150
	ranges	10.0.0.200-10.0.0.250
		e.g. 10.0.0.1, 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.255
		Save Cancel Help

Once the Device-List has been saved, it can now be added as a condition in an Automated Device Classification Policy.

• Go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Automated Device Classification

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics	I	C Activate	<b>ල</b> Ca	ancel Change	
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				٦
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Device is on Server Farm	Set device role to full-access			00	

The above Automated Device Classification policy will assign the Server Farm to have full-access.

# **Configuring Guest Access**

CGX Access supports multiple login methods for guest registration. Typical options include self-service registration, sponsor registration, or self-service registration with sponsor approval. CGX Access can support all these methods simultaneous, so different registration processes can be used for different use cases. Guest Access is a standard feature that is enabled by default, but a few steps are recommended to customize or enhance the guest experience.

# **Customize Captive Portal**

Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings and click on "Site Information"

- Adjust the Company Title, Welcome Page Title, and any other details as desired.
- Upload a corporate image\* and adjust the header and footer colors

\*Note: Image most be PNG file and be 385 x 108 pixels. MS paint can be used to create.

Edit Setting		×
Site Information	General	Î
Company Title	MyCompany	
Copyright	MyCompany. Copyright © 2021. All Rights Reserved.	
Session Idle Timeout (Seconds)	86400	
Portal Logo	Upload Image	
	Note: Image should be PNG file, 385 x 108 pixels, white background	
Header Line Color	<b>*</b>	
Footer Line Color		ł
	Texts on Landing Pages	
Welcome Page Title	Welcome to the MyCompany network!	
Welcome Page Message	You have reached this portal because your device needs to be registered as a guest or employee device.	
Additional Message		
	Save Cancel Help	2

# **Customize Guest Portal**

Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings and click on "Guest Registration":

- Edit the title and message boxes as desired.
- Enable or disable terms and conditions
- Set the number of days to keep guest history details

Edit Setting		×
Guest Registration		
Login Page Title	Welcome to Guest Registration!	I
Login Page Message	You have reached this portal because your device needs to be validated for guest access.	
Pending Approval Message Title	Default: Guest Access is Pending	l
Pending Approval Message	Default: Please wait for Approval	
	Get Guest's IP from Proxy Header or Client Side	I
Miscellaneous		
How Long to Keep Guest History (Days)	30	I
Guest Login		1
2	☑ Allow Guest Login by Access Code	
	☑ Allow Guest Login by Credential	
Self-serve Guest Template	1 day guest	Ŧ
	Save Cancel Help	

• Scroll down to enable your organizations preferred login methods

Edit Setting			×
the guest history			^
Guest Login			
	🕑 Allow Guest Login b	y Access Code	
	🗷 Allow Guest Login b	y Credential	
	Allow Self-serve Gu	est Registration	
Self-serve Guest	1 day guest	•	
Template			

Allow guest login by access code – Enabled by default, this option allows for a guest to use a sponsor-provided access code to self-register a guest account. Based on Guest Templates, different access codes can require different registration information or grant different access to the guest  $\land$  consultant. Approval can also be required after the guest registers.

Guest Login	
Please select your login type.	
I have an access code.	
O I have guest login credentials.	
O Register for Guest Access.	
Please enter your provided Access Code.	
Access Code:	_
Submit	

Allow guest login by credential – Enabled by default, this option allows for a guest to use their guest credentials to login. Guest Credentials can be created and provided by a sponsor or created by the guest as part of an earlier self-registration process.

Guest Login
Please select your login type.
O I have an access code.
<ul> <li>I have guest login credentials.</li> </ul>
O Register for Guest Access.
Username:
Password:
Forgot Your Password?

Allow self-service guest registration – Enabled by default, this option allows a guest to provide their contact information required and get immediate guest access without requiring an access code. Based on the guest template used, approval can be required, and the information they must provide can be customized.

It also possible to provide the guest with an option to provide their sponsor's e-mail address for the approval process and on how long their registration should be active.

🧏 Guest Login	
Please select your login type.	
<ul> <li>I have an access code.</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>I have quest login credentials.</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Register for Guest Access.</li> </ul>	
Your Sponsor's Email	
Full Name * :	
Full Name * :	
Email Address * :	
Cell Phone * :	
Company * :	
Expire after:	12h 💙
	12h
Request Access	1d 2d

Automated Guest Registration – CGX Access supports an optional automated guest account creation feature. Using syslog, third-party systems can send guest information to the appliance. For example, when a guest registers at reception, the front desk system can send guest details to CGX Access, which will create a guest account for the user. Contact InfoExpress or your authorized partner for more information on this enhanced feature.

### **Guest Registration Templates**

As outlined above, CGX Access supports multiple registration methods to support a variety of guest registration experiences. To customize these different methods, templates can be used to address unique registration requirements. For example, some guest templates can require basic guest info and grant internet access for 1 day. While other templates may require more in-depth information and require approval before granting 3 days of server access.

A few registration templates are pre-configured on CGX Access. These templates can be modified, and new templates can be created. The default templates include:

- Consultant Registers Themselves
  - Consultant register themselves using an access code

- o Account expiration set for 1 week, with authentication every 12 hours
- A consultant flag is assigned, so that the guest would be given consultant access
- Approval is not required, but can be enabled
- Limited to 1 device
- 1-day guest no approval necessary
  - o A random password \ username is created automatically once user inputs their details
  - Account is valid for (12-hours)
  - No approval is necessary, but can be enabled

#### • Automated Guest Registration

- Used only when the custom Automated Guest Registration Feature has been configured. This feature allows 3<sup>rd</sup> party servers to send guest accounts details to the CGX Access appliance.
- Controls the length of time a user is allowed guest access and how often they must reauthenticate

### **Customizing Device Registration Templates for Guests**

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Device Registration Templates  $\rightarrow$  Guest Registration Templates
- Select an existing template or Click "Add template" to create a new one

Add Action					×
Guest Registration					<b>^</b>
	Self-Registrat	ion O Sponsor	Registers Guest		
	Method Name		Description		
	Username Created	Automatically 🔻	Username Length	8	
	Password Created	Automatically 🔻	Password Length	6	
Sele	ect the information that	Show guest credentials on registree the guest must enter	ation		
		Guest Name		Company Name	- 1
		Host's Name		E-mail Address	- 1
		Phone Number		Company Address	- 1
	Confirm Guest	No Approval necessary		Flag Guest	
	Commin Guesc	No Approval necessary			- 1
	Access Code Type	None 🔻			
	count Expires after		Re-authentication after	12h	- 1
	(e.g. 12h, 1d, 1w)	Guest can set Account expiration	(e.g. 12h, 1d, 1w)		
Мах	Devices per Guest	1			-
				Save Cancel H	elp

The above image shows various fields for the guest registration options. Here administrators can adjust the user experience, required fields, and account validity, etc.

The first step is to decide if the template is for guest Self-Registration or Sponsor Registration. With Sponsor registration, an approved employee(s) will create the account and pass the details to the visitor. When a sponsor registers a guest, there is no need for the Access Code concept, so this template has less options.

Self-Registration
Sponsor Registers Guest

#### **Guest Template options (for Self-Registration)**

Method Name - Use a name that would be meaningful for the Sponsors who may use it

**Description** – Optional (can be used to provide more details about the template)

Username Created – Decide if the account name is auto generated by the system or the guest

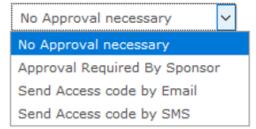
Password Created - Decide if the account name is auto generated by the system, or the guest

**Show guest credentials on registration** – After a guest completes the registration process their browser will show a successful web page. If selected, this checkbox with remind or inform the user of their credentials on this success page.

Select the information that the guest must enter – Select the boxes that the guests are shown during the registration process. Additional custom fields can be added under Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings  $\rightarrow$  Registration Fields.

Confirm Guest – This dropdown box allows you to configure an additional verification check.

Confirm Guest



**Approval Required by Sponsor** – With this option a sponsor e-mail is configured in the template. This sponsor will receive an e-mail when a guest registers using this template. The Sponsor can 1-click a link in the e-mail to approve the guest. If outside the office, the sponsor can also reply to the e-mail with a keyword, like (approve, accept, OK, etc.) to also approve the guest. (e-mail approval requires the e-mail orchestration feature to be enabled.

When using the Self-Service Registration feature, it can convenient to allow the guest to specify their sponsor. A group of employees or the entire company can be given permission to sponsor a guest.

Confirm Guest	Approval Required by Sponsor
	Allow guest to provide sponsor email
Approval Emails	*@iex.demo
	Send email to guest after approving / rejecting request

**Note:** WhatsApp can also be used to approve Guest. See <u>Appendix E</u> for more information on WhatsApp integration.

**Send Access code by Email** – When using this method, the e-mail provided by the guest during registration will be sent a code, that must be typed into the guest portal to complete the registration process. Note: the guest will need access to his e-mail account.

**Send Access code by SMS** – When using this method, the phone number provided by the guest during registration will be sent a code, that must be typed into the guest portal to complete the registration process. Note: an SMS gateway must be configured to use this feature.

**Flag Guest** – When checked, a Flag can be selected and assigned to the guest's device. This flag is useful for assigning a specific type of access to this guest. For example, if assigned a consultant flag, they will be assigned consultant access. For more details on flags, see the section titled Flagging Devices and Whitelisting.

Access Code Type – Access codes are useful when using different templates for different types of guests. This optional setting allows you to configure if the access codes created can be used more than once (Group use) or one-time only. Group use can be more convenient, while one-time use offers more security for when access is being provided to sensitive resources.

**Code Expires after** – This setting allows you to configure how long an Access code, once created, will still be valid. For Group use codes, you may want to change them on a regular basis. You can provide a default value, but also choose to let sponsors change this value, when the Access code is first generated.

Access Code Prefix – By default, access codes are randomly generated, with a prefix that can be used to help you remember what the code is for. For example, if you create a template designed for events, you may want to use a prefix EV. Then all access codes generated using this template will start with EV. A simpler approach is to check the box to allow the sponsors to create any code they prefer manually. With this approach, they can create access code called Dec20-event. This would be easier for both sponsors and guests to remember.

Account Expires After – Sets the duration of the account once it has been created using this template. Once the account expires, the guest will need to complete the registration process again, if necessary. Using the checkboxes provided, the administrator can choose to allow sponsors or guests to adjust the length of time their account should last.

Max Devices per Guest – Sets the max number of devices that a guest can use with their account.

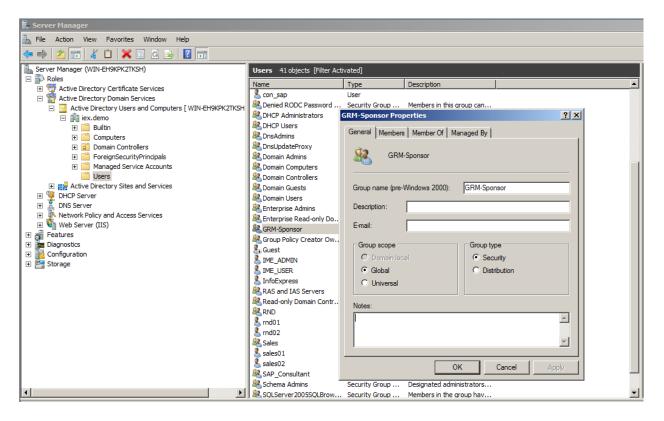
# **Setting up Sponsors**

CGX Access can query the Active Directory server to validate permissions for sponsors to access the management UI. Approved sponsors would only be given access to guest management functionality.

Using the "Active Directory Users and Computers" MMC:

• Add the group "GRM-Sponsor"

Note: upper/lower case is significant when creating AD groups.



Once the GRM-Sponsor AD group has been created, staff can be given sponsor rights (by adding their user-id to the GRM-Sponsor group).

By default, sponsors can sponsor all types of guest accounts. To limit sponsors to only certain guest types (for example, if the reception staff is only permitted to create daily visitors), please follow these steps:

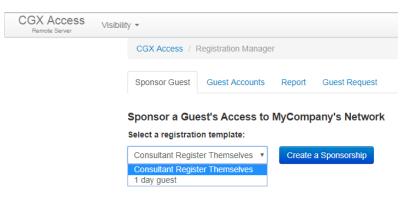
- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Device Registration Methods
- Verify the types you want the sponsor to be able to administer
- Go to Configuration → Permission Manager and select the GRM-Sponsor Role (or another role you may have created)
- Select the appropriate Registration Methods the sponsor should be allowed to administer

Guests/BYOD devices		
Access to Device Registration Templates		
Allow to Sponsor		
	☑All guest types	
	Consultant Register Themselves	
	1 day guest	
Access to Device Registration Manager	● No access ○ Readonly ○ R/W	

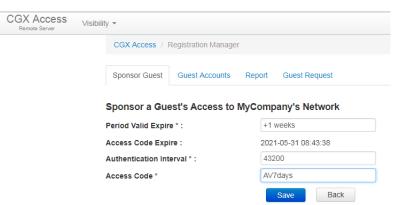
# **Sponsoring Users**

#### Creating a "Consultant Registers Themselves" Access Code

- A user who has either GRM-Sponsor or CGX-Admin permissions can go to Visibility → Guest Registration Manager. If a user only has sponsor access, they can log in to the main CGX Access web GUI and will have limited access to the Sponsor Guest pages.
- Choose "Consultant Registers Themselves" from the pick list and click on "Create a Sponsorship":



• Complete the fields as desired and click "Save":



To create other types of access codes, follow the process outlined above. When additional information is needed, the web UI will request them.

# **Configuring Device Registration**

CGX Access supports device registration and is commonly used to support Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) initiatives. Employee's or student devices are checked by validating their credentials against Active Directory or a Radius database. When a new device joins the network, it will be redirected to the captive portal. Staff would then be able to register the device, and this registration would be valid for days, weeks, or months. Several configuration options allow administrators to have access control of the BYOD devices. Administrative options include:

- Which AD groups are allowed to register BYOD device(s)
- Quantity of BYOD devices allowed per user (by group)
- Type of BYOD devices allowed
- Network access granted

### **Customizing the Device Registration portal**

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings and click on "Employee Device Registration".

Edit Setting	×
Employee Device Re	gistration
	Show Terms of Use
Login Page Title	Welcome to Employee Device Registration!
Login Page Message	You have reached this portal because your device needs to be validated.
Employee Device Registration Title	Employee Device Registration
	Save Cancel Help

- Edit the title and message boxes as desired.
- Opt-in or Opt-out to show Terms of Use
- Click on save to accept any changes to the configuration.

### **Confirm Active Directory settings**

To validate AD credentials, the AD server must be configured correctly. To verify settings, use the GUI.

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings.
- Click on Active Directory Servers

dit Setting		
Add New Active Direc	tory Server	
Server 1 ×		
Host or IP	192.168.253.100	
Account Suffix	@iex.demo	
LDAP Query User Name	rnd	
LDAP Query Password	•••••	
Encryption	None v	
Group Query DN Prefix		
Query Timeout		
Test LDAP Connection		
Computer Query Settin	gs	
Query Covers	Entire Directory V	
Test Computer Query	]	

• Under Active Directory Server, confirm the host or IP address of the AD domain controller and the Account suffix in the "Account Suffix" field. The @ symbol should proceed the Account Suffix.

By default, all domain users with valid credentials will be able to register their BYOD devices. It is possible to limit which groups can register their devices, and to set different policies for different groups. The enable granular AD registration, the AD groups must be specified in the CGX Access server.

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings.
- Click on "Names Used by Policies":

lames Used by Pol	lelee			
	Icles			
	Note: All strings are case sensiti	ive		
Access Control Lists names	byod-access consultant excluded full-access guest-access limited Restrict-Agent Restrict-Azure Restrict-FaceB restricted	Active Directory or LDAP User Groups	sales RND VIP IT-Dept	æ
evice Flags				
User Defined Flags	Approved CCTV consultant IOT Pending-approval	Reserved Flags	AD-managed app-control-off APT-Event arp-scan-ignoring AV-config AV-managed AV-off	•

Add the Active Directory groups that would need to register their devices. Groups that are added will be shown as a configurable option when customizing Device Registration methods.

### **Customizing Device Registration Methods**

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Device Registration Templates  $\rightarrow$  Device Registration Templates



There are two default templates for employee device registration, one for customers use cloud based MS Azure AD, and another traditional AD servers. To make changes to a typical registration...

• Click on the "Employee Registers Personal Device" registration type:

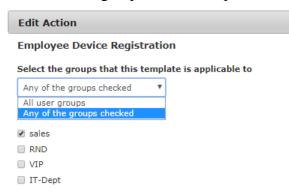
Edit Action		×
Employee Device Registration		
Select the groups that this template	is applicable to	
All user groups		
Select the information that the user	must enter during registration	
Full Name		
✓ Organization		
E-mail Address		
Phone Number		
Department	V Flag	
Address	byod 🗸	
Location		
Access Expires after (e.g. 12h, 1d, 1	w)	
365d		
User Must Re-login after (e.g. 60m, 3	12h, 3d)	
30d		
Max Device(s) Allowed for User		
3		
	Save	Cancel Help

The above defines various parameters that can be customized for the device registration method. The default method is configured to apply to all users with valid credentials.

Additional device registration methods can be created for different AD groups to have different parameters. This can be useful in situations where different length of access, device quantity allowed, or different information needs to be gathered on the user.

To modify:

- Change the top pulldown box to 'Any of the groups checked'
- Select the AD groups that the template will be applied to:



- Change the parameters for information gathered, access expiration, etc.
- Click 'Save' and Activate changes.

**Note:** When you have multiple Device Registration Methods, they are evaluated in order from top down. Methods can be re-arranged by dragging and dropping them in order they should be evaluated.

## **User Experience**

When a user is connected to the network, the browser will be redirected to a page like this:

nfoexpress Easy NAC
me to the MyCompany network!
ve reached this portal because your device needs to be registered as a guest or employee
Employee Device Registration
Guest Access

Users can click on the Employee Device Registration link to be presented with a login screen:

infoex Easy	
	e Device Registration! rtal because your device needs to be validated.
	Device Self-Registration Login
	Please enter your Active Directory (employee) credentials.
	Username:
	Password:
	Login

At this point, the employee will enter their AD credentials. Depending on the configuration they may be prompted to complete an information form such as Full Name, Organization, Location, etc. After completion the appropriate access will be assigned.

This device will be remembered by the system based on the timeout specified in the device registration template. The user will not be asked for credentials until the device ages out of the database or the timer for login requests has expired.

**Note:** If a user exceeds the number of devices they are allowed to registered, they will be shown their list of devices, and can choose to deregister one of more devices.

# **Integration:** Anti-Virus \ Endpoint Management

CGX Access supports integration with enterprise AV and endpoint management vendors. By leveraging the integration with the management server, CGX Access can enforce compliance with security policies, without the use of agents. Devices out-of-compliance can be restricted, and an administrator(s) alerted.

Supported Solutions:

- Bitdefender GalaxyZone
- Carbon Black Cb Response 6.x +
- Cabon Black Cloud
- CrowdStrike Falcon
- Cybereason
- ESET Antivirus 6.5+
- FireEye HX Integration
- HCL BigFix 9.x +
- Ivanti Security Controls 2019.3 +
- Kasaya VSA
- Kaspersky Antivirus 10.x+
- Managed Engine Desktop Central
- Managed Engine Patch Manager
- McAfee ePO 5.x +
- Microsoft Intune
- Microsoft SCCM  $\setminus$  WSUS 4.x +
- Microsoft Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)
- Moscii StarCat 2013 and StarCat 10
- OKTA Verify
- Sophos Enterprise Console 5.x +
- Sophos Central (cloud)
- Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager 14.x
- Symantec Endpoint Protection Cloud
- Trend Micro OfficeScan XG+
- Trend Micro Apex Central (cloud)
- Webroot (cloud)

## **Bitdefender Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Bitdefender"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Access URL and API Key

Edit Action	×
Bitdefender Ø Enable integration	A
Configuration          Access URL       https://cloud.gravityzone.bitdefenf         API Key       ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	Test connection Show query result data
Policies	FLAG
Flag devices running Bitdefender Agent	AV-managed T
Flag devices that are offline	AV-offline 🔻
Flag devices that have not reported in 30 days	AV-stale 🔻
Flag devices with AV signature older than 30	AV-out-of-date 🔻
	infected 🔻 👻
	Save Cancel Help

The URL and API key can be obtained by logging into GravityZone  $\rightarrow$  MyAccount  $\rightarrow$  API

#### Notes:

1. The access URL should be lower case and match what's specified in the Control Center

Control Center API	
Access URL:	https://cloud.gravityzone.bitdefender.com/api

2. The Network API needs to be enabled

API key			×
Key:	ae73d4ed8165808d30396cf0e32	14d7b8c2fbb9a485ba91a665f7467228dc57	
Enabled APIs:	Companies API Licensing API Packages API	Reports API     Accounts API     Incidents API	
	Network API     Integrations API     Policies API	Quarantine API	
Save	Cancel		

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

### Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Bitdefender cloud have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policies

CONDITIONS	FLAG
Flag devices running Bitdefender Agent	AV-managed <b>v</b>
✓ Flag devices that are offline	AV-offline 🔻
✓ Flag devices that have not reported in 30 days	AV-stale 🔻
✓ Flag devices with AV signature older than 30 days	AV-out-of-date 🔻
✓ Flag devices that are infected by malware	infected •
✓ Flag devices if Advanced Threat Control is disabled	AV-Config 🔻
✓ Flag devices if AntiMalware is disabled	AV-Config 🔻
	AV-Config 🔻
	AV-Config 🔻
✓ Flag devices if Firewall is disabled	AV-Config 🔻
✓ Flag devices if Encryption is disabled	AV-Config 🔻

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	Cancel Change		nges	
Add Rule Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	3
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		Ø	G	3
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		Ø	G	>

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AVout-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

## **Carbon Black Cb Response Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Carcon Black Cb Response"

Edit Action				×
Carbon Black CbResponse				
Enable integration				
CbResponse Server				
Host or IP	10.20.0.12	Token		
Port	443	Timeout (seconds)	60	
Query interval (seconds)	150			Test connection
Policies				
CONDITIONS				FLAG
✓ Flag devices enrolled in Carb	on Black CbResponse			managed-device •
Flag devices that have not control	onnected in the past 30	days		stale-device 🔻
				Save Cancel Help

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / port
- In Cb Response console go to Admin $\rightarrow$  My Profile  $\rightarrow$  API Token

API T	Token - Cb Response X					- Bilezya	-		x
$\epsilon \rightarrow 0$	C 1 Not secure   https://10.20.0.12/#/profile/token					☆	C 🖸	+	:
Сь	My Profile				<b>.</b>	Notifications 💌	ပြု adr	nin 👻	
* 4 \$	Profile Info API Token  API Token  e7548e92f9aa5f04b3b91a615ae73f0e  Reset API Token	8a697696 c	сору						
o ₪ ∑	Reset API (den								
() 小学 🏢									
(!)									
Þ	Carbon Black.			6	5.1.2 Copyright © 2013-2017 (	Carbon Black, Inc	All rights re	served	ŧ.

• Copy API Token and Paste into Token field

Edit Action						×
Carbon Black CbResponse Carbon Black CbResponse						
CbResponse Server						
Host or IP	10.20.0.12		Token	••••••	••••••	paste
Port	443		Timeout (seconds)	60		
Query interval (seconds)	150				Test connection	
Policies						
CONDITIONS					FLAG	
Flag devices enrolled in Carbo	on Black CbResponse				managed-device	٣
Flag devices that have not co	nnected in the past	30	days		stale-device	٣
					Save	Cancel Help

• Use "Test connection" button to validate settings and connectivity

#### **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Cb Response server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce endpoint devices have been installed with the Cb Response agent and connecting to the server regularly.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies		
CONDITIONS		FLAG
☑ Flag devices enrolled in Carbon Black Cb Response		managed-device ~
☑ Flag devices that have not connected in the past	30 days	stale-device 🗸

When selected CGX Access will set flags and automatically grant access to devices being protected by Cb Response. While devices that have not connected in the past x days can be flagged as a stale-device.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy						
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	ြင်း Ca	ncel	Chan	iges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met					
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted					
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted			0	Ø	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant			0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access			0	Ø	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned full-access if flagged as managed-device. However, it would be given a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as a stale-device. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The managed-device flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being protected by the Carbon Black will automatically be granted access to the network.

## **Carbon Black Cloud Integration**

- In Carbon Black Cloud web management go Settings  $\rightarrow$  API Access
- Define a new Access Level Note: only Read access for Device - General Information is required

am Eas	e :y NAC	* Description Easy NAC API Call	Copy permissio	ns from				
>	CATEGORY	PERMISSION NAME 🔝		CREATE	READ	UPDATE	DELETE	EXECUTE
>	Device	Bypass	device.bypass					
>	Device	General information	device					
>	Device	Policy assignment	device.policy					
>	Device	Background scan	device.bg-scan					

• Add an API Key with the custom Access Level create above

Add API Key		×
* Name		Î
Easy NAC API		
Description		
* Access Level type	* Custom Access Level	- 1
Custom ~	EasyNAC	~
Authorized IP addresses Specify a comma separated list of single IP address, or an IP address ro	ange in CIDR notation (for example, 203.0.113.5/32).	
		•
Save		

• Once API is created - Copy API ID and API Secret key

API Credentials		×
APTID AHPK7WTPWS	G	
API Secret Key		Ģ

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Carbon Black"
- Check "Enable Integration", select Cloud version
- Enter Access URL, API ID, API Secret Key and Org Key

Edit Action				
Carbon Black Integration				
Server Configuration				
Version	Cloud			
Host or IP	defense.conferdeploy.net	Org Key	7DESJ9GN	
Port	443	Timeout (Seconds)	60	
API ID	AHPK7WTPWS		Test Connection	
API Secret Key			Show Query Result Data	
Query Interval (Seconds)	150			
			Sav	ve Cancel Help

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

### **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Carbon Black Cloud have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policy		
CONDITION		FLAG
✓ Flag devices enrolled in Carbon Black		managed-device ~
✓ Flag devices with deregistered or uninstalled sensor		No-AV ~
✓ Flag devices with sensor being in bypass mode		AV-offline ~
✓ Flag devices with inactive sensor		AV-off ~
✓ Flag devices with out-of-date sensor		Sensor-out-of-date v
✓ Flag devices that are in quarantine		infected v
✓ Flag devices that have not connected in the past	7 days	stale-device 🗸

There are multiple conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy				
Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	3 Cancel	l Char	ıges
Add Rule				
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met			
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted			
Has any of these flags: APT-Event, Dark-IP-scan, FP-mismatched, FW- Event, infected, IPS-Event, Scan-detected, SIEM-Event	Set device role to High-Risk because Malware or Suspicious Behavior detected Send Email to Admin	0	Ø	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, FW-off, Sensor-out-of-date	Set device role to non-compliant	0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: printer, switch, router, network-infrastructure, AD-managed, AV-managed, full-access, managed-device	Set device role to full-access	0	ß	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as staledevice or Sensor-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The managed-device flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the organization's Carbon Black deployment can automatically be granted access to the network.

## **CrowdStrike Integration**

- In CrowdStrike web management go Support and Resources  $\rightarrow$  API Client and Keys
- Click on "Add new API Key"

Easy NAC Appliance			
SCRIPTION			
Integration with Network Access Control fo	or automated trust and compliance che	cks	
PI SCOPES			11.
	Deed	W-ia -	
	Read	Write	
Alerts	Read	Write	
Alerts Detections			
Detections			
Detections			
Detections Device control policies			

#### Note: only Read access to Hosts in required

### • Complete form and Click ADD

API client created	×
✓ API client created	
CLIENT ID	
b6732f5435e74d66872e2b01d215f6bf	ſ
SECRET	
	Ū
BASE URL	
https://api.us-2.crowdstrike.com	ſ
Copy this to a safe place	
This is the only time we'll show you this secret	
DONE	

Note: once API is created - Copy Client ID, Secret, and Base URL

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "CrowdStrike"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Access URL, Client ID and Client Secret

rowdStrike Integration		
Enable integration		
erver Configuration		
Access URL	https://api.crowdstrike.com	Test connection
Access ORL	https://api.crowdstrike.com	Show query result data
Client ID	ac0d09b230e48445409c987bfbd6:	
a"		
Client Secret	2XPOJa19iNms3g45cSk7uWPb6Qp	
Query Interval	150	
(Seconds)		
olicies		
olicies DNDITIONS		FLAG
ONDITIONS	Strike Acest	
	Strike Agent	FLAG managed-device •
ONDITIONS		
■ Flag devices running Crowd Flag devices that have not r	reported in 30 days	managed-device   •     stale-device   •
ONDITIONS  Flag devices running Crowd	reported in 30 days	managed-device •
■ Flag devices running Crowd Flag devices that have not r	date older than 7 days	managed-device   •     stale-device   •

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

### **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and CrowdStrike cloud have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policies

CONDITIONS		FLAG	
✓ Flag devices running CrowdStrike Agent		managed-device	¥
Flag devices that have not reported in	14 days	stale-device	Ŧ
✔ Flag devices with Sensor update older than	7 days	Sensor-out-of-date	T
Flag devices with Device Control disabled		dev-control-off	¥
Flag devices with Firewall disabled		FW-off	•

There are multiple conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy				
Classify devices based on their characteristics	S Activate	Cancel	l Char	nges
Add Rule				
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met			
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted			
Has any of these flags: APT-Event, Dark-IP-scan, FP-mismatched, FW- Event, infected, IPS-Event, Scan-detected, SIEM-Event	Set device role to High-Risk because Malware or Suspicious Behavior detected Send Email to Admin	0	C	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, FW-off, Sensor-out-of-date	Set device role to non-compliant	0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: printer, switch, router, network-infrastructure, AD-managed, AV-managed, full-access, managed-device	Set device role to full-access	0	C	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as staledevice or Sensor-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The managed-device flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the organization's CrowdStrike deployment can automatically be granted access to the network.

## **Cybereason Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Cybereason"
- Check "Enable Integration"

Edit Action				×
EARLY RELEASE				<b>^</b>
Cybereason Integration				
Enable integration				
Server Configuration				
Host or IP	customer.cybereason.net	Username	user@infoexpress.com	
Port	443	Password	•••••	
Query Interval (Seconds)	120		Test connection	
(Seconds)			Show query result data	
Policy				
CONDITION			FLAG	
Flag devices running Cyberes	ason Agent		AV-managed	~
Elan devices that are offline			AV-offline	~
			Save	cel Help

- Enter Hostname or IP (should be the same as your management console)
- Specify Username and Password (should also work on management console)
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval the default or adjust
- Save this configuration

#### **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Cybereason have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions. CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

#### Policy

CONDITION	FLAG
Flag devices running Cybereason Agent	AV-managed 🗸
Flag devices that are offline	AV-offline 🗸
Flag devices that are isolated	infected ~
Flag devices with Device Control disabled	dev-control-off 🗸
✓ Flag devices that have not connected in 30 days	AV-stale 🗸
✓ Flag devices that have not updated in 30 days	AV-out-of-date 🗸
Flag devices with Sensor out of date	Sensor-out-of-date 🗸
Flag devices with Firewall disabled	FW-off 🗸
✓ Flag devices with Anti-Malware disabled	AV-off 🗸
Flag devices with Prevention mode disabled	AV-Config 🗸
Flag devices with Anti-Ransomware disabled	AV-Config 🗸
Flag devices with Anti-Exploit disabled	AV-Config 🗸
Flag devices with PowerShell mode disabled	AV-Config 🗸
Flag non-compliant managed devices	non-compliant 🗸

#### Automated Device Classification Policy

Classify devices based on their characteristics

.....

Add Rule		
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met	
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access	
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access	
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted	
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted	ØC
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant	ØØ
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access	00

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AVout-of-date. **Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

### **ESET Antivirus Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the "ESET Antivirus"

Edit Action						×
ESET Antivirus Enable integration						
SQL Server Configuration						
Host or IP	10.10.0.230			Username	sa	
Port	1433			Password	*****	
Database	era_db				Test connection	
Query interval (seconds)	150					
Policies					FLAG	
Flag devices running ESET A	ntivirus Agent				AV-managed	
Flag devices with AV signature	re older than	10	days		AV-out-of-date	Ŧ
Flag devices that have not control	onnected in	7	days		AV-stale	¥
					Save	ancel Help

CGX Access communicates with the ESET Security Management Center by querying the SQL database.

- Setup the SQL Server used by ESET to support SQL queries over TCP 1433. See prerequisites below.
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP, database port, database name, and database Username & Password
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings  $\rightarrow$  Save changes

#### **ESET SQL Prerequisites:**

- Configure the MS SQL Server on the Administration Server to enable TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433
- Use MS SQL Server management studio to create an account with permission to read the era\_db database. The default database name use by ESET is era\_db.
- Configure the firewall on the ESMC to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433

**Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your ESET Security Management Center.

### **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and ESET Security Management Console have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies			
CONDITIONS		FLAG	
Flag devices running ESET Antivirus Agent		AV-managed	•
Flag devices with AV signature older than	10 days	AV-out-of-date	٣
Flag devices that have not connected in	7 days	AV-stale	
Find devices that have not connected in	7 0090	Av-stale	

There are a few conditions you can select to monitor. When selected, CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	C Cance	l Char	nges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	C.	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AVout-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

## **FireEye HX Integration**

- In FireEye HX management console go to Admin  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings  $\rightarrow$  User Accounts
- Create a New User and select the "API Admin" role for the account.

Settings	Accounts
Date and Time	NOTE: When setting up for the first time, please update passwords for the built-in 'admin', 'monitor', 'analyst', 'oper
User Accounts	Add New User
DTI Network	
Notifications	User Name Role
Network	EasyNAC_API Api Admin V
Certificates/Keys	Create Password
Appliance Backup & Restore	Confirm Password
Appliance Licenses	
Login Banner	ADD USER

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "FireEye Integration"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Input the Access URL. It's the same URL used by the FireEye management console

FireEye Integration		
Enable integration		
Server Configuration		
Access URL	https://fireeyeserver	Test connection
Username	EasyNAC_API	Show query result data
Password	••••	
Query Interval (Seconds)	150	
		Save Cancel Help

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

#### **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and FireEye have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Edit Action			3
CONDITION FLA	AG		
Flag devices running FireEye Agent	AV-managed		~
Flag devices with Antivirus update older than 7 days	AV-out-of-date		~
Flag devices with Malware Guard update older 7 days than	AV-out-of-date		~
Flag devices with Antivirus disabled	AV-off		~
Flag devices with Malware Guard disabled	AV-off		~
	Save	Cancel	Help

There are multiple conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy				
Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	Cancel	Char	nge
Add Rule				
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met			
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted			
Has any of these flags: AV-off Device's last DHCP broadcast request more than 5 minutes ago	Set device role to non-compliant because Device is NOT compliant with the corporate Anti-Virus policy. AV is disabled.	h 📀	Q.	
Has any of these flags: AV-out-of-date Device's last DHCP broadcast request more than 5 minutes ago	Set device role to non-compliant because Device is NOT compliant with the corporate Anti-Virus policy. AV is out-of-date.	h @	Q.	
Has any of these flags: APT-Event, FP-mismatched, FW-Event, infected, IPS-Event, SIEM-Event	Set device role to High-Risk-Event because Malware or Suspicious Behavior has been detected	0	ß	)[

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-off or a signature outdated. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the organization's FireEye deployment can automatically be trusted on the network.

# **HCL BigFix Integration**

In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration

• Select "IBM BigFix"

Enable integration							
SQL Server							
Host or IP	192.168.253.130		Us	ername	SA		
Port	1433		Pa	assword	•••••		
Database	BFEnterprise					Test connection	
Query interval (seconds)	150						
Policies							
CONDITIONS						FLAG	
	BigFix					patch-managed	•
Flag devices enrolled in IBM							
<ul> <li>Flag devices enrolled in IBM</li> <li>Flag devices that have not re</li> </ul>	ported in	30	days			patch-stale	
-		30 30	days days			patch-stale	٣
Flag devices that have not re	tes greater than						• •

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- Save changes

#### **BigFix SQL Prerequisites:**

- Verify the MS SQL Server on the BigFix server was enabled for TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433.
- Use MS SQL Server management studio to create an account with permission to read the BFEnterprise database. BFEnterprise is the default database name used by BigFix.
- Configure the firewall on the BigFix server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433

**Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your BigFix Server.

### **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and BigFix server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with patch policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies		
CONDITIONS		FLAG
✓ Flag devices enrolled in IBM BigFix		patch-managed •
${\ensuremath{\mathscr{C}}}$ Flag devices that have not reported in	30 days	patch-stale 🔻
${\ensuremath{\mathscr{C}}}$ Flag devices with failed updates greater than	30 days	patch-failed •
$\ensuremath{ \checkmark }$ Flag devices with pending updates greater than	30 days	patch-pending •

There are four conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	C Cance	I Char	nges	
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	ß	X
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	©.	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as patchpending or patch-failed. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The patch-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the BigFix server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# **Ivanti Security Controls**

In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration

• Select "Ivanti Security Controls"

Edit Action								×
Ivanti								
SQL Server								
Host or IP	10.100.20.150			Username	SA			
Port	1433			Password	•••••			
Database	Protect					Test connection		
Query interval (seconds)	150							
Policies								
CONDITIONS						FLAG		
Flag devices managed by Iva	nti					patch-managed	I	٣
Flag devices that have not re	ported in	30	days			patch-stale		¥
Flag devices with missing pat	ches greater than	10				patch-pending		•
Flag devices with missing pro	duct levels greater than	10				patch-pending		•
						Sa	ve Cancel	Help

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- Save changes

#### **Ivanti SQL Prerequisites:**

- Verify the MS SQL Server on the Ivanti server was enabled for remote connections and specify a port such as 1433.
- Use MS SQL Server management studio to create an account with permission to read the Protect database. Protect or SecurityControls are the default database names used by Ivanti.
- Configure the firewall on the Ivanti server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433
- **Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your Ivanti Server.

### **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Ivanti server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with patch policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies		
CONDITIONS		FLAG
Flag devices managed by Ivanti		patch-managed <b>v</b>
$ \ensuremath{ \en$	30 days	patch-stale 🔻
${f Z}$ Flag devices with missing patches greater than	10	patch-pending <b>v</b>
$\ensuremath{\mathbb{Z}}$ Flag devices with missing product levels greater than	10	patch-pending <b>v</b>

There are four conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	Cance Cance	I Char	nges	
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access		0		
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	G	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as patchpending. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The patch-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by Ivanti can automatically be granted access to the network.

### Kaseya VSA Integration

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Kaseya VSA"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / port
- Enter Username / Password to login to Kaseya management console

Edit Action				
Kaseya VSA Integration				
Enable Integration				
erver Configuration				
Host or IP	saasxx.kaseya.net		Username	admin@example.com
Port		443	Password	•••••
				Test Connection
Query Interval (Seconds)	900			
Matching endpoints	Hostname v			
based on	Hostiane			

Note: Username used for integration should have System Role and System Scope

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

### **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Kaseya VSA server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with patch policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policy		
CONDITION		FLAG
✓ Flag devices enrolled in Kaseya VSA		patch-managed v
✓ Flag devices that have not reported in	30 days	patch-stale v
Flag devices with missing approved + missing manual patches greater than	5	patch-pending v
✓ Flag devices with pending patches greater than	5	patch-pending v

There are four conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	🕑 Cance	l Char	nges	
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-stale, patch-pending, patch- failed, non-compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as patchstale. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The patch-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by Kaseya VSA can automatically be granted access to the network.

### **Kaspersky Antivirus Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the "Kaspersky Antivirus"

Edit Action							;
Kaspersky Antivirus							
Enable integration							
SQL Server Configuration							
Host or IP	192.168.253	.150		Username	SA		
Port	1433			Password	•••••		
Database	KAV				Tes	t connection	
Query interval (seconds)	150						
Policies							_
CONDITIONS					FLAG		
Flag devices running Kaspers	sky Antivirus Aç	pent			AV-manage	d T	
Flag devices with inactive on	-access scanne	r			AV-off	•	
Flag devices with AV signatu	re older than	10	days		AV-out-of-d	ate 🔻	
Flag devices that have not control	onnected in	7	days		AV-stale	•	
						Save Cancel	Help

CGX Access communicates with the Kaspersky Administration Server by querying the SQL database.

- Setup the SQL Server used by Kaspersky to support SQL queries over TCP 1433. See prerequisites below.
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP, database port, database name, and database Username & Password
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings  $\rightarrow$  Save changes

#### Kaspersky SQL Prerequisites:

- Configure the MS SQL Server on the Administration Server to enable TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433
- Use MS SQL Server management studio to create an account with permission to read the KAV database. KAV is the default database name used by Kaspersky.
- Configure the firewall on the Kaspersky Administration Server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433

**Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your Kaspersky AV Server.

### **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Kaspersky Administration Server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies				
CONDITIONS		FLA	AG	
🕑 Flag devices running Kaspersky Antivirus Ager	nt		AV-managed	•
				_
Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner			AV-off	۳
Flag devices with AV signature older than	10	davs	AV-out-of-date	•
	10	uuys	AV-out-or-date	
Flag devices that have not connected in	7	days	AV-stale	•

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	Cancel	l Char	nges
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	x
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	x
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	ß	x

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-off or AV-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

## **ManageEngine Desktop Central Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "ManageEngine Desktop Central"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / port
- Enter Username / Password to login to ManageEngine

Edit Action					×
ManageEngine Desktop Centra Centration	al				Í
Server Configuration					
Host or IP	10.10.200.102	)	Username	admin	
Port	8383		Password	••••	
API Version	1.3 ~			Upload QR Code image	
Query Interval (Seconds)	900			Test connection	
Policy					
CONDITIONS				FLAG	
✓ Flag devices enrolled in Mar	nageEngine Desktop Central			managed-device v	
✓ Flag highly vulnerable device	es			non-compliant 🗸	
Flag devices that have not r	reported in 30	days		stale-device v	l
				Save Cancel Help	ī

- If enabled for Multi-Factor Authentication, Upload QR Code image
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

### **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and ManageEngine server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with patch policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies					
CONDITIONS		FLA	G		
Flag devices enrolled in ManageEngine Desktop Central				managed-device	¥
Flag highly vulnerable devices				non-compliant	Ŧ
Flag devices that have not reported in	30	days		stale-device	•

There are three conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	C Cance	Char	nge:
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	Ø	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-stale, patch-pending, patch- failed, non-compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	X
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as staledevice or non-compliant. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The managed-device flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the ManageEngine server can automatically be granted access to the network.

### **ManageEngine Patch Manager Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "ManageEngine Patch Manager"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Select ManageEngine Type: On-premise or Cloud
- Enter Hostname or IP / port
- If On-premise: Enter Username / Password to login to ManageEngine
- If Cloud: Enter OAuth Client ID, Secret and Token

Edit Action				×
ManageEngine Patch M	lanager Integration			
	Enable Integration			
ManageEngine Type	Patch Manager Plus On-Premise 🗸 🗸			
	Patch Manager Plus On-Premise Patch Manager Plus Cloud: Self-Client			
Server Configuration	Pater Hanager Pids cloud, Self-cilent			
Host or IP		Username		
Port	6383	Password	•••••	
API Version	1.3 ~		Test Connection	
Query Interval (Seconds)	300			
Policy				
CONDITION			FLAG	
an etc. destanded and	die Maarangester Datek Maaran			
			Save	Cancel Help

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

### **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and ManageEngine server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with patch policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policy				
CONDITION F		FLAG		
Flag devices enrolled in ManageEngine Patch Manager			patch-managed	~
Flag highly vulnerable devices			non-compliant	*
Flag devices that have not reported in	30	days	patch-stale	~

There are a few conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	C Cance	Char	nges
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-stale, patch-pending, patch- failed, non-compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	ß	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as patchstale or non-compliant. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The patch-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the ManageEngine server can automatically be granted access to the network.

### **McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the "McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator"

Edit Action				×
McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator				î
Enable integration				
SQL Server Configuration				I
Host or IP	10.20.0.95	Username	SA	I
Port	1433	Password	•••••	I
Database	ePO2K8R2SP1-IE10		Test connection	I
Query interval (seconds)	150			l
Policy				ſ
CONDITIONS			FLAG	
Flag devices running ePO Ag	ent		AV-managed	I
Flag devices with inactive on	-access scanner		AV-off	I
Flag devices with AV signatu	re older than 10 o	ays	AV-out-of-date	I
Flag devices that have not control	onnected in 7 0	ays	AV-stale	ł
				*
			Save Cancel Help	

CGX Access communicates with the ePolicy Orchestrator by querying its SQL database.

- Setup the SQL Server used by ePO to support SQL queries over TCP 1433; See below.
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings  $\rightarrow$  Save changes

#### ePO SQL Prerequisites:

- Configure the MS SQL Server on the ePO server to enable TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433
- Configure the firewall on the ePO server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433

**Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your ePO Server.

#### **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and ePO SQL server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

CONDITIONS		FLAG
✓ Flag devices running ePO Agent		AV-managed 🔻
${\ensuremath{arepsilon}}$ Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner		AV-off 🔻
$\hfill\blacksquare$ Flag devices that Endpoint Security Web Control	s not installed	web-control-off 🔻
Flag devices that Drive Encryption is not installed		drive-encryption-off 🔹
Flag devices that Data Loss Prevention is not inst	alled	DLP-off •
${\overline{\!$	10 days	AV-out-of-date 🔻
$\ensuremath{\mathscr{C}}$ Flag devices that have not connected in	7 days	AV-stale 🔻

There are seven conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Ad	ivate	Cance	l Char	iges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	Ø	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	G	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	ß	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-off or AV-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

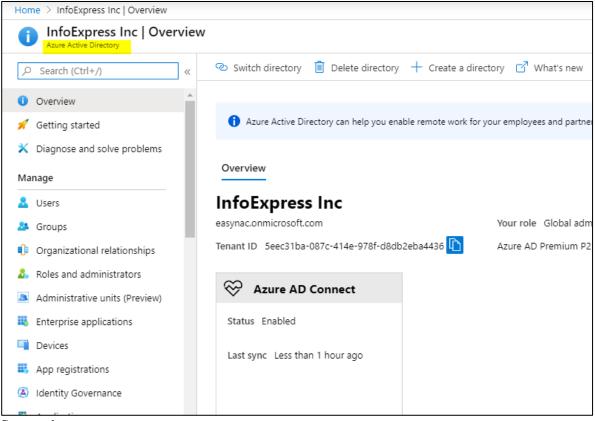
Policy

# **Microsoft Intune Integration**

Integration with MS Intune requires an application be registered in MS Azure.

#### Step 1: Register a new application in Azure directory

• Go to Azure Directory  $\rightarrow$  App registration  $\rightarrow$  New registration (Screen 1, 2 & 3)





	𝒫 Search	resources, services, and docs (G+/)		G 🗘	🕸 ? 🙂	jmabie@easynac.onmi INFOEXPRESS
Home > InfoExpress Inc   App	registrations					
Azure Active Directory	App regi	strations				
	«	🕂 New registration 🕀 Endpoints 🤌 Troubles	nooting 🛛 🛇 Got feedback?			
1 Overview	^	Welcome to the new and improved App registration:	(now Generally Available). See what's new and learn more on how	it's changed. 🕂	•	
🚀 Getting started	- 1	All applications Owned applications				
X Diagnose and solve probl	ems	₽ Start typing a name or Application ID to filter the	e results			
Manage	- 1	Display name	Application (client) ID		Created on	Certificates & secrets
🚨 Users	- 1					
🎎 Groups		-				
🏮 Organizational relationsh	ips					
👃 Roles and administrators						
Administrative units (Prev	view)					
Enterprise applications						
Devices						
H App registrations						
Identity Governance						

Screen-2

Home > InfoExpress Inc   App registrations > Register an application
Register an application
* Name
The user-facing display name for this application (this can be changed later).
Demo-MSGraph V
Supported account types
Who can use this application or access this API?
Accounts in this organizational directory only (InfoExpress Inc only - Single tenant)
O Accounts in any organizational directory (Any Azure AD directory - Multitenant)
Accounts in any organizational directory (Any Azure AD directory - Multitenant) and personal Microsoft accounts (e.g. Skype, Xbox)
Help me choose
- Dedirect LIDL (optional)
By proceeding, you agree to the Microsoft Platform Policies 🔄
Register
Screen-3

Step 2: Set Client secret and copy 'client ID', 'tenant ID' and 'client secret' (Screen 4, 5 & 6)

Home > InfoExpress Inc   App registrat	ions > Demo-MSGraph	
Demo-MSGraph		
	« 🗊 Delete 🌐 Endpoints	
Verview	Display name : Demo-MSGraph	Supported account types : My organization only
() Ouickstart	Application (client) ID : c0d99ee6-cc90-4ae4-b71d-feae6014f9c3	Redirect URIs : Add a Redirect URI
-	Directory (tenant) ID : 5eec31ba-087c-414e-978f-d8db2eba4436	Application ID URI : Add an Application ID UR
Integration assistant (preview)	Object ID : f76db94a-01b1-4cbe-9b9f-228e8682a59d	Managed application in : Demo-MSGraph
Manage		*
🚾 Branding		
Authentication	Welcome to the new and improved App registrations. Looking to learn now it's change	ed from App registrations (Legacy): Learn more
📍 Certificates & secrets		
Token configuration	Call APIs	Documentation
<ul> <li>Search (Ctrl+/)</li> <li>Quexics</li> <li>Quexics</li> <li>Quickstat</li> <li>Display name : Demo-MSGraph</li> <li>Application (client) ID : c0d99ee6-cc90-4ae4-b71d-feae6014f9c3</li> <li>Directory (tenant) ID : 5eec31ba-087c-414e-978f-d8db2eba4436</li> <li>Object ID : f76db94a-01b1-4cbe-9b9f-228e6682a59d</li> <li>Branding</li> <li>Authentication</li> <li>Certificates &amp; secrets</li> <li>Token configuration</li> <li>Certificates &amp; secrets</li> <li>Token configuration</li> <li>Certificates &amp; secrets</li> <li>Token configuration</li> <li>Gens and administrators (Pr</li> </ul>		
Conners		
Roles and administrators (Pr		Help and Support
0 Manifest		

Screen-4

Home > InfoExpress Inc   App registrations	> Demo-MSGraph   Certificates & secrets	
💡 Demo-MSGraph   Certifica	ates & secrets	
	Add a client secret	
Noverview	Description	
🗳 Quickstart		
💉 Integration assistant (preview)	Expires	
Manage	In 1 year	
🔤 Branding	O In 2 years	
Authentication	_	
Certificates & secrets	Add	
H Token configuration	Curren	
→ API permissions	Client secrets	
🙆 Expose an API	A secret string that the application uses to prove its ide	entity when requesting a token. Also can be referred to
Owners	Thew client secret	
Roles and administrators (Pr	Description	Expires Value
Manifest	No client secrets have been created for this application	l.

Screen-5

Client secrets			
A secret string that the application uses to prove its	s identity when requesting a token. Also can be	e referred to as application password.	
+ New client secret			
Description	Expires	Value	
easynac	5/14/2021	1VB******************	<u>D</u>

Screen-6



Home > InfoExpress Inc   App registrations	> Demo-MSGraph   API permissions	Request API permissions	
Demo-MSGraph   API per	missions	Microsoft Graph https://graph.microsoft.com/ Docs 20 What type of permissions does your application require?	
<ul> <li>Overview</li> <li>Quickstart</li> <li>Integration assistant (preview)</li> </ul>	Configured permissions Applications are authorized to call API: all the permissions the application nee	Delegated permissions Your application needs to access the API as the signed-in user.	Application permissions Your application runs as a background service signed-in user.
Manage	+ Add a permission Gra	Select permissions	
🔤 Branding	API / Permissions name	Type to search	
Authentication	✓ Microsoft Graph (1)	Permission	Admin
Certificates & secrets     Token configuration	User.Read	email View users' email address ①	
-D- API permissions		offline_access Maintain access to data you have given it access to ③	
Expose an API     Owners		□ openid Sign users in ⊙	
Roles and administrators (Pr		□ profile View.users' basic profile. ①	
🔟 Manifest		Update permissions Discard	

Screen-7

• Ensure permission name, type and Admin consent is granted for each permission

Home > InfoExpress Inc   App registrations	> Demo-MSGraph   API permissions					
Demo-MSGraph   API per						
	🕐 Refresh					
u Overview	3 Successfully granted admin consent for the requested pe	rmissions.				
🗳 Quickstart	Configured permissions					
💉 Integration assistant (preview)	Applications are authorized to call APIs when they are gra	nted permissi	ons by users/admins as part of the o	onsent process. The list of	configured permissions should in	clude
Manage	all the permissions the application needs. Learn more abo	ut permission	s and consent		5 1	
Branding	+ Add a permission Grant admin consent f	or InfoExpres				
Authentication	API / Permissions name	Туре	Description	Admin consent requi	Status	
📍 Certificates & secrets	✓ Microsoft Graph (3)					
III Token configuration	DeviceManagementManagedDevices.Read.All	Delegated	Read Microsoft Intune devices	Yes	<ul> <li>Granted for InfoExpress Inc</li> </ul>	
API permissions	Directory.Read.All	Delegated	Read directory data	Yes	Granted for InfoExpress Inc	
Expose an API	User.Read.All	Delegated	Read all users' full profiles	Yes	<ul> <li>Granted for InfoExpress Inc</li> </ul>	
💀 Owners						
Roles and administrators (Pr						
Manifest						

Screen-8

## Step 4: Go to CGX Access $\rightarrow$ Configuration $\rightarrow$ Integration $\rightarrow$ Microsoft Intune.

• Paste the required details, copied in step-2 above (Screen 9)

CGX Access Remote Server	Cont	figuration	,		Enforcement is <b>disabled</b> on 5 of <b>5</b> su
		Edit Action			
		Microsoft Intune			
		Enable integration			
		Configuration			
		Tenant ID	5eec31ba-087c-414e-978f-d8db2	Username	jmabie@easynac.onmicrosoft.com
		Client ID	c0d99ee6-cc90-4ae4-b71d-feae6	Password	•••••
		Client Secret	1VBvHLU-8gyU_J-ywlLXBaT5~Yj{		Test connection
		Query interval (seconds)	300		☑ Show query result data
		Policies			
		CONDITIONS			FLAG
		☑ Flag Azure AD registered/jo	ined devices		AD-managed
					Save Cancel

Screen-9

• Input Azure credentials – Account must have a role of "Intune Administrator (Screen 10)

Home > Microsoft Intune > Users | All users >

Surendra   Assig User	ned	roles							
X Diagnose and solve problems	*	Administrative r	oles						
		Search	can be used to g	·	er Microsoft service	s. Lean	n more		
	1	Search by name or	description		$\sim$				
Administrative units (Preview)	Т.	Role	$\uparrow_{\downarrow}$	Description	Resource Name	$\uparrow\downarrow$	Resource Type	$\uparrow_{\downarrow}$	Туре
<ul> <li>★ Diagnose and solve problems</li> <li>▲ Add assignments × Remove assignments N Refresh × O Got feedback?</li> <li>Administrative roles</li> <li>Administrative roles can be used to grant access to Azure AD and other Microsoft services. Lear</li> <li>Search Type</li> <li>Search by name or description</li> <li>All</li> <li>All</li> <li>Bole</li> <li>Cut Description</li> <li>Resource Name</li> </ul>	Organization		Built-in						
Applications									
🔓 Licenses									
Screen-10									

• Use "Test connection" button to validate settings and connectivity (Screen-11)

Edit Action		×	
Microsoft Intune		Alert	
Configuration Tenant ID	5eec31ba-087c-414e-978f-d8db2	Connection test was successful. Time elapsed: 4 seconds Number of entries: 7 Data:	
Client ID	c0d99ee6-cc90-4ae4-b71d-feae6	{     "Entries": [     //	
Client Secret	1VBvHLU-8gyU_J-ywlLXBaT5~Yjł	"id": "567b8e68-6b28-4551-b68e-8bb144ba2e47", "deletedDateTime": null, "accountEnabled": true,	
Query interval (seconds)	300	<pre>"approximateLastSignInDateTime": "Wed May 13 2020 12:06:37 GMT+0530 (I T)",</pre>	S
Policies		"deviceId": "db344807-00b7-414f-a05b-a4cad618ea83", "deviceMetadata": null, "deviceVersion": 2,	
CONDITIONS		"displayName": "Win10x64-E", "isCompliant": null,	
Flag Azure AD registered/join	ned devices	"isManaged": null, "Manufacturer": null,	
Daskton 0 Mabila	Managament	[	Close

Screen-11

### **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and MS Intune have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce endpoint devices have been enrolled and compliant with Intune device compliance policy.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policies

CONDITIONS	FLAG
✓ Flag Azure AD registered/joined devices	AD-managed <b>v</b>
Flag managed devices	managed-device <b>v</b>
Flag non-compliant managed devices	non-compliant 🔻

When selected CGX Access will set flags and automatically grant access to devices being managed by MS-Intune. While devices out of compliance can be flagged as a non-compliant.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	🖸 Cance	l Cha	nge
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	ß	)
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	)
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	ß	

The policy above shows a device will be assigned full-access if flagged as AD-Managed or manageddevice. However, it would be given a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as a non-compliant. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Note:** The AD-Managed flag is applied to both Azure AD-joined devices and AD registered devices. While the managed-device flag is only applied to Azure AD-joined devices.

# **Microsoft SCCM \ WSUS Integration**

CGX Access communicates with the WSUS server by querying the SQL database. By default, WSUS uses the Windows Internal Database, so it may be necessary to first update the WSUS server to use SQL. See WSUS SQL prerequisites below.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the "Microsoft WSUS"

10.0.20.200	Username	sa	
1433	Password	•••••	
SUSDB		Test connection	
150			
	1433 SUSDB	1433 Password SUSDB	1433   Password     SUSDB   Test connection

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- Save changes

### WSUS SQL Prerequisites:

- By default, WSUS uses the Windows Internal Database. For integration with CGX Access, it is required to use an SQL database.
- Verify the MS SQL Server on the WSUS server was enabled for TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433.
- Configure the firewall on the WSUS server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433

**Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your WSUS Server.

# **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and WSUS server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with patch policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policies

CONDITIONS		FL	AG
✓ Flag devices enrolled in Microsoft WSUS			patch-managed •
✓ Flag devices that have not reported in	30	days	patch-stale v
Flag devices with failed updates greater than	30	days	patch-failed •
$\ensuremath{\mathscr{C}}$ Flag devices with pending updates greater than	30	days	patch-pending •
Flag devices with updates with errors greater than	5		patch-failed <b>v</b>
Flag devices with updates needed greater than	5		patch-pending •
✔ Flag devices with updates with no status greater than	5		patch-nostatus 🔻

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	Cance	Char	nges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	G	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as patchpending or patch-failed. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The patch-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the WSUS server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# **Microsoft Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)**

CGX Access can query endpoints directly using Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI). WMI allows for Windows endpoints and Windows Servers to be queried over the network for compliance requirements.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the "Microsoft WMI"

Edit Action						×	
Microsoft Windows Managemen	t Instrumentation (WMI)						•
<ul> <li>Enable integration</li> </ul>							
Domain Admin Account	iex\administrator	Query inter (secon					
Password	•••••						
Test Device	192.168.253.54	Test connection					
Policies							
CONDITIONS		FLA	G				
Flag devices manageable by	WMI		managed-device	•			
Verify device is domain	n joined						
Flag devices with local account	nt login		local-login	•			v
					Save Cance	Help	

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Username and Password

The account requires permissions to perform WMI queries on client computers. A Domain Admin Account is often necessary. Use domain/username syntax for the Domain Admin account.

• Use "Test connection" button to validate settings

Alert	×
WMI test passed	successfully.
Query result:	
Name:	Microsoft Windows 7 Professional
CSName:	MANAGED01
Build Number	: 7601
	Close

• Save changes

### WMI Troubleshooting:

Windows contains a number of security features that may prevent the use of WMI on a remote system. Therefore, it may be necessary to modify your system's Active Directory and Windows Firewall settings for WMI to work.

As WMI is a pre-installed component on Microsoft Operating systems, it's recommended you use Microsoft resources from troubleshooting WMI on your network.

https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/win32/wmisdk/connecting-to-wmi-remotely-starting-with-vista

## **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and endpoint devices have been successfully tested, policies can be set to detect compliance with policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies	
CONDITIONS	FLAG
✓ Flag devices manageable by WMI	managed-device 🔻
Verify device is domain joined	
✓ Flag devices with local account login	local-login 🔻
✓ Flag devices with AV installed	AV-managed <b>v</b>
✓ Flag devices with no AV installed	No-AV 🔻
✓ Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner	AV-off •
✓ Flag devices with old AV-signatures	AV-out-of-date 💌
✓ Flag devices with personal firewall off	FW-off •
Flag devices with running process	
dropbox.exe, onedrive.exe, googledrivesync.exe	non-compliant 🔻
✓ Flag devices without running process	
bdagent.exe	non-compliant 🔻

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	Cance Cance	l Char	nges
Add Rule	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		Ø	ß	)
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		Ø	G	
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	)

The policy above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-Off or non-compliant. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

# **Configuring ACLs for WMI access**

When a device has full access or enforcement is disabled, WMI remote queries should always work. However, when a device is quarantined, it would be necessary for the endpoint device to be able to communicate with the AD server to validate the WMI query.

Below is a sample ACL that should be assigned when a device is out of compliance to allow the WMI query to work. In this example, the AD server has IP address 192.169.253.100.

ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='UDP' AND PORT==53 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==53 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='UDP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN ADDR=="192.168.253.100" HTTPREDIRECT(RemediatePortal) DENY WHEN TRUE

The ACL example below should be used if DNS Redirection is also required. In this example the AD server has FQDN host name: WIN-EH9KPK2TKSH.iex.demo with IP address 192.168.253.100

ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN ADDR=="192.168.253.100" DNSALLOW WHEN DNSTYPE==33 DNSALLOW WHEN HOSTNAME=="WIN-EH9KPK2TKSH.iex.demo" DNSREDIRECT(RemediatePortal) DENY WHEN TRUE

# **Moscii StarCat Integration**

In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration

• Select "Moscii StarCat"

Edit Action						
Moscii StarCat						
5QL Server						
Host or IP	192.168.253.140		Username	SA		
Port	1433		Password	•••••		
Database	StarCat				Test connection	
Query interval (seconds)	150					
olicies						
ONDITIONS					FLAG	
Flag devices enrolled in Mosc	ii StarCat				managed-device	•
Flag devices that have not co	nnected in the past	7 days			stale-device	٣
					Save Can	cel Hel

- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- Save changes

### **StarCat SQL Prerequisites:**

- Verify the MS SQL Server on the StarCat server was enabled for TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433.
- Use MS SQL Server management studio to create an account with permission to read the StarCat database. StarCat 2013 doesn't use a default database name, so check the SQL server for the correct name.
- Configure the firewall on the StarCat server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433
- **Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your StarCat server.

## **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and StarCat server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce all Windows devices have been installed with the StarCat agent and connecting to the server regularly.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies		
CONDITIONS		FLAG
✓ Flag devices enrolled in Moscii StarCat		managed-device •
$\ensuremath{\mathscr{C}}$ Flag devices that have not connected in the past	30 days	stale-device •

When selected CGX Access will set flags and automatically grant access to devices being managed by StarCat. While devices that have not connected in the past x days can be flagged as a stale-device.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy						
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	🕑 Car	ncel (	Chan	ges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met					
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted					
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted			0	©.	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant			0	C.	x
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access			0	ß	×

The policy above shows a device will be assigned full-access if flagged as managed-device. However, it would be given a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as a stale-device. The order of the rules is important, as they are evaluated in descending order.

**Tip:** The managed-device flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the StarCat server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# **Okta Integration**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Okta"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Enter Access URL and API Key

EARLY RELEASE		
Okta Integration		
Enable integration		
Server Configuration		
Access URI	https://trial-3944826.okta.com	Test connection
Api Toker	00d2Ximf3fuO7Ey3BbWp7g1h87T	Show query result data
Query Interva (Seconds		
Policy		
CONDITION		FLAG
✓ Flag devices running Okta	a Verify	managed-device v
Flag devices with Encrypt	ion disabled	drive-encryption-off 🗸 🗸
Plag devices with Entrypt		

The Access URL is the same as Okta organization URL

The API key can be created by logging into Okta with Admin privileges: Okta  $\rightarrow$  Security  $\rightarrow$  API  $\rightarrow$  Token

1. Click Create Token API

Authorization Servers	Tokens	Trusted Origins	i			
A Create token						
Token value	F	ind token			Search by Last u	used: Most recent 🔻
Token types	0 1	oken name	Created	Expires	Last used	Actions
All	0					

Help

	× Create token
	Token created successfully! Please make a note of this token as it will be the only time that you
Create token What do you want your token to be named?	will be able to view it. After this, it will be stored as a hash for your protection. Copy to clipboard
Easy NAC The token name is used for tracking API calls.	Token Value 00edHd8YowfhOE7xsGhg1EX7-trYGEoxRzjg1Fl3
Create token Cancel	OK, got it

- 2. Copy token to clipboard and paste to CGX Access
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings

Edit Action		
EARLY RELEASE		
Okta Integration		
Enable integration		
Server Configuration		
Access URL	https://trial-3944826.okta.com	Test connection
Api Token	hOE7xsGhg1EX7-trYGEoxRzjgfFI3	Show query result data
Query Interval (Seconds)	150	

- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

**Note:** The API token has a 30 days expiry time. This value cannot be changed. However, if the token is used, the expiration timer is reset each time so the token will remain available.

## **Setting and Enforcing Patch Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Okta have been successfully tested, policies can be set to auto detect devices running Okta Verify. Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policy	
CONDITION	AG
✓ Flag devices running Okta Verify	managed-device ~
✓ Flag devices with Encryption disabled	drive-encryption-off v

When enabled, flags will automatically be set on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Automated Device Classification policies will reference these flags to set the appropriate access for the devices.

# **SentinelOne Integration**

- In SentinelOne management console go Settings  $\rightarrow$  Users  $\rightarrow$  Service Users
- Create a New Service User

	Name *
	Easy NAC
6	Name of Service User cannot be edited after creation
	Description
	Compliance integration
<u> </u>	Expiration Date *
	2 Years 👻
	Oct 28, 2024 12:11:27

• Select Appropriate Access Level

Select Scope of Access	×
Set the Scope of Access manually or Copy The Scope Access Level	From A Different User
1 / 1 Account selected	All Accounts 👻 Clear Selection
Infoexpress Inc. Viewer 🗸	
Cancel	Back Create User

• Once API is created – Copy API Token

API Token for Easy NAC	×
① This is the last time you can see this token.	
API Token:	
mmuajgRqgZVUu8WdaMc0bq39NjKqBKgj6THRsz3euDoFCYj6mjhJsn7IIMtjcBv1 8Ae1KC0MyC1itSJW	
This API token will expire on Oct 28, 2024 12:11	
리 Copy API Token 👘 🛃 Download API Token	
	Close

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "SentinelOne Integration"
- Check "Enable Integration" and paste the API Token
- Input the Access URL. It's the same URL used by the SentinelOne management console

Edit Action			
SentinelOne Integration			
Enable Integration			
Server Configuration			
Access URL	https://usea1-partners.sentinelone	Test Connection	
API Token	•••••	Show Query Result Data	
Query Interval (Seconds)	150		
Policy			
CONDITION		FLAG	
Flag devices running Sentine	lOne Agent	AV-managed	~
		Save	el Help

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

## **Setting and Enforcing Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Sentinel One have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

CONDITION FLAG		FLAG	
Flag devices running SentinelOne Agent		AV-managed	~
Flag devices that are offline		AV-offline	~
Flag devices that have not reported in	7 days	AV-stale	~
Flag devices with SentinelOne Agent out of dat	e	AV-out-of-date	~
Flag devices that are infected by malware		infected	~
Flag devices with Apps Vulnerability not up to optimize the second se	date	patch-pending	~
Flag devices with Network Quarantine disabled		AV-Config	~
Flag devices with Firewall disabled		FW-off	~
Flag devices with Encryption disabled		drive-encryption-off	~

There are multiple conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy				
Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	Cancel	Char	iges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met			
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access	1		
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access			
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted			
Has any of these flags: AV-offline Device's last DHCP broadcast request more than 5 minutes ago	Set device role to non-compliant because Device is NOT compliant with the corporate Anti-Virus policy. AV is not online	0	©.	×
Has any of these flags: AV-stale	Set device role to non-compliant because S1 agent has NOT connected to server in 7 days	0	Q.	×
Has any of these flags: VoIP, AD-managed, AV-managed, full-access, managed-device, network-infrastructure, printer, router, switch	Set device role to full-access because assigned trusted flag	0	ß	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AVoffline or a stale-device. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the organization's SentinelOne deployment can automatically be trusted on the network.

# **Sophos Integration**

Easy NAC supports integration with the on-premise Enterprise Console or the Sophos Central cloud version. Either option can be enabled individually or together to support a migration to the cloud.

### **Configuring Enterprise Console:**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select Sophos
- Check "Enable integration" and select the "Enterprise Console (SQL Server)"

Ed	it Action			
Sop	phos			
	Enable integration			
Cor	nfiguration			
(	<ul> <li>Enterprise Console (S</li> </ul>	QL Server)		
	Host or IP	192.168.253.100	Username	sa
	Port	1433	Password	•••••
	Database	Sophos540		Test connection
	Sophos Central			
	Query interval (seconds)	20		

CGX Access communicates with the Sophos Enterprise Console by querying the SQL database.

- Setup the SQL Server used by Sophos to support SQL queries over TCP 1433. See below.
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings  $\rightarrow$  Save changes

### Sophos SQL Prerequisites:

- Configure the MS SQL Server on the Sophos server to enable TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433
- Install and use MS SQL Server management studio to create an account with permission to read the Sophos DB
- Sophos uses different schemas. Check which schema/database name Sophos is using: Examples include: SOPHOS540 (Sophos EP 5.4), or SOPHOS521 (Sophos EP 5.2)
- Configure the firewall on the Sophos server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433
- **Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your Sophos Server.

### **Configuring Sophos Central:**

- In Sophos Central go to System Settings  $\rightarrow$  API Token Management
- Create an API Token for CGX Access

CGX Access System Settings / API To	oken Management / CGX Access	Renew	Dele
API Token Sum	mary		
Name	CGX Access		
Expires	Dec 18, 2019		
API Access URL	https://api3.central.sophos.com/gateway	Сору	
Headers	x-api-key: jZAyz7gc9X7d3s3c3OrCv91wNwa2HjWd6ZNxyKjs Authorization: Basic NmZIMzQxM2UtZTBhYy00ZGJkLTk0YjYtNzE4ZmY3N2Q2MDBl0kZDUTZPWUJFSUNDQ0JKVkFFN0tTS1dJUDVQ QU5SSFJUK2paQXl6N2dj0Vg3ZDNzM2MzT3JDdjkxd053YTJIaldkNlp0eHiLanM=	Сору	
API Access URL + Headers	url: https://api3.central.sophos.com/gateway, x-api-key: jZAyz7gc9X7d3s3c3OrCv91wNwa2HjWd6ZNxyKjs, Authorization: Basic NmZIMzQxM2UtZTBhYy00ZGJkLTk0YjYtNzE4ZmY3N2Q2MDBl0kZDUTZPWUJFSUNDQ0JKVkFFN0tTS1dJUDVQ QU5SSFJUK2paQXI6N2dj0Vg3ZDNzM2MzT3JDdjkxd053YTJIaldkNlpOeHILanM=	Сору	

- Copy the API Access URL + Headers
- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select Sophos
- Check "Enable integration" and Check the "Sophos Central"
- Place cursor in API field and right-click to paste the API Access URL + Headers

Action					
05					
Enable integration					
iguration					
Enterprise Console (	SQL Server	r)			
✓ Sophos Central					
API Access URL +					
Headers		Undo	Ctrl+Z		
		Redo	Ctrl+Shift+Z		
		Cut	Ctrl+X	Test connec	tion
		Сору	Ctrl+C		aon
Query interval	20	Paste	Ctrl+V		
(seconds)			n text Ctrl+Shift+V		

- Test the Connection
- If test is successful, save changes
- If test is unsuccessful, check that the CGX Access appliance has access to the Sophos Cloud.

## **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Sophos server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

Policies	
CONDITIONS	FLAG
✓ Flag devices running SAV	AV-managed
☑ Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner	AV-off 🔻
In Flag devices infected with malware	infected <b>v</b>
Flag Devices with in-active application control	app-control-off
Flag Devices with in-active device control	dev-control-off
	AV-out-of-date 🔻
	AV-stale 🔻
	Save Cancel Help

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	🕑 Cance	l Char	nges
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	8
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-off or AV-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# **Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager - 14.x**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager"
- Check "Enable Integration" and select 14.x
- Enter Hostname or IP / port
- Enter Username / Password to login to SEPM

Edit Action						×
Symantec Endpoint	Protection	Manager				
	🗷 Enable ir	ntegration				
Version	14.x	<b>7</b>				
Configuration						
	Host or IP	10.20.0.31		Username	admin	
	Port	8446		Password	•••••	
Qu	ery interval (seconds)	150		Domain		)
Policy CONDITION					Test connection	]
Flag devices run	nning SEP				AV-managed	•
✓ Flag devices with	th inactive or	-access scanner			AV-off	Ŧ
Flag devices that	at have not c	onnected in	7 days		AV-stale	T
					Save	ncel Help

Edit Action				×
Symantec Endpoint Protection Ma © Enable inte Version 14.x •				
Configuration				
Host or IP	10.20.0.31	Username	admin	
Port	8446	Password	•••••	
Query interval (seconds)	150 Alert Connection was	* established successfully	Test connection	
Policy CONDITION Flag devices running SEP		Close	FLAG AV-managed	¥
Flag devices with inactive on-a	ccess scanner		AV-off	¥
✓ Flag devices that have not conr	nected in 7 days		AV-stale	¥
			Save	cel Help

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

# **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Symantec server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policy

CONDITION FL	AG
Flag devices running SEP	AV-managed 🔻
✓ Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner	AV-off •
✓ Flag devices with AV signature older than 7 days	AV-out-of-date 🔻
Flag devices if Proactive Threat Protection is disabled	AV-Config •
✓ Flag devices if Firewall is disabled	FW-off v
Flag devices if Network Intrusion Prevention is disabled	AV-Config 🔹
Flag devices if Browser Intrusion Prevention IE is disabled	AV-Config •
✓ Flag devices if Browser Intrusion Prevention FF is disabled	AV-Config 🔹
	Av coming .
Flag devices if Memory Exploit Mitigation is disabled	AV-Config 🔹
Flag devices if Tamper Protection is disabled	AV-Config •

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	🕑 Cance	l Char	nges
Add Rule					
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	G	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0	ß	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0	G	×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-off or AV-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# **Trend Micro Integration**

Easy NAC supports integration with the on-premise enterprise console or the Apex Central cloud version. Either option can be enabled individually.

### **Configuring Enterprise Console:**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the "Trend Micro"
- Check "Enable integration" and select the "On-premise" server type

Edit Action					
rend Micro In					
Enable	Integration				
Server Configu	ration				
	Server Type	On-premise 🗸			
	Host or IP		Username		
	Port	1433	Password	•••••	
	Database			Test Connection	
	Query Interval (Seconds)	120			
Policy					
ONDITION				FLAG	
					-

CGX Access communicates with Trend Micro by querying its SQL database.

- Setup the SQL Server used by Trend Micro to support SQL queries over TCP 1433. See prerequisites below.
- Enter Hostname or IP / database port / database name
- Enter Username / Password to connect to database
- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- Save changes

### Apex One SQL Prerequisites:

- For integration with CGX Access, it is required to use an SQL database. If SQL is not in use, Trend Micro provides a migration tool to make this easy: <u>https://success.trendmicro.com/solution/1059973-migrating-officescan-osce-server-database-to-an-sql-server</u>
- Verify the MS SQL Server on the OCSE server was enabled for TCP/IP and specify a port such as 1433.

• Configure the firewall on the APEX One server to allow CGX Access to communicate with the MS SQL Server port: 1433

**Tip:** It may be helpful to search, "how to enable remote connections on SQL version..." referencing the specific version used by your Apex One Server.

### **Configuring APEX Central:**

- In Apex Central, use Automation API Access Settings to generate an Application ID and API Key
- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select Trend Micro
- Check "Enable integration" and select the "APEX Central"
- Add Host or IP address
- Copy the Application ID and API Key to CGX Access

Edit Action					2
Trend Micro Integratio					
Server Configuration					
Ser	ver Type	Apex Central 🗸			
Н	ost or IP		Application ID		
	Port	443	API key		
				Test Connection	
				Show Query Result Data	
	Interval Seconds)	120			
Policy					
CONDITION				FLAG	
				Save Cano	Help

# **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Trend Micro server have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policy

CONDITION			LAG	
Flag devices running Apex One Security Agent			AV-managed	~
Implies that Apex One Security Agent is offl	ine		AV-offline	~
Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner			AV-off	~
Flag devices with AV signature more than	10	days old	AV-out-of-date	~
Flag devices that have not connected in	7	days	AV-stale	~

There are multiple conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions.

Note: when using APEX central, they may be less options, due to Trend Micro's API limitations.

Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

	C Activate	Cance	l Chai	nges
Actions taken when conditions are met				
Set device role to full-access				
Set device role to full-access				
Set device role to restricted				
Set device role to restricted		0	ß	×
Set device role to non-compliant		0	G.	×
Set device role to full-access		0	ß	×
	Set device role to full-access Set device role to full-access Set device role to restricted Set device role to restricted Set device role to non-compliant	Actions taken when conditions are met Set device role to full-access Set device role to full-access Set device role to restricted Set device role to restricted Set device role to non-compliant	Actions taken when conditions are met Set device role to full-access Set device role to full-access Set device role to restricted Set device role to restricted Set device role to non-compliant	Actions taken when conditions are met Set device role to full-access Set device role to full-access Set device role to restricted Set device role to restricted Set device role to non-compliant

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AV-off or AV-out-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# Webroot Integration

- In Webroot web management go to Settings  $\rightarrow$  Unity API Access  $\rightarrow$  New
- Create New Client Credential
  - The Event notification API will not be used

CREATE NEW CLIENT CREDENTIAL	
2 3	
Do you plan to use the event notification API? Notification API allows you to subscribe to a set of events on different domain levels, and receive related notifications in near real-time (for example WebThreatShield.UrlAction or Endpoint.FileDetection).	
<ul> <li>No</li> </ul>	
Cancel Previous Next	t
CLIENT CREDENTIAL RECORD	
Important! This is the client identifier and the client secret for the client credential record listed below. The client secret is not persisted and it is your responsibility to remember the client secret and treat it as sensitive information. If you lose the client secret you need to generate a new secret in order to continue using the affected client identifier in your application.	
News	
Name Easy NAC	
Description	
Integration with Webroot and Easy NAC	
Client ID	

I Have Made Note Of The Client Secret

• Once created – Copy Client ID and Client Secret key

client\_YAllWKX@infoexpress.com

Please make note of your client secret

**Client Secret** 

EN;ht!1\*Fa3#9?y

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Webroot"
- Check "Enable Integration"
- Paste Client ID and Client Secret key from above steps
- Enter details:
  - Access URL: <u>https://unityapi.webrootcloudav.com</u>
  - o Username and password used to authenticate to the Webroot Management Console
  - Key Code Use Webroot Key Code under Settings  $\rightarrow$  Downloads

Note: Don't use Parent Keycode – Connection would be successful but no results will be retrieved

Edit Action				×
Webroot Integration				^
Enable Integration				
Server Configuration				
Access URL	https://unityapi.webrootcloudav.c	Key Code	C320-GSMT-9D4E-80A9-4720	
Username	support@infoexpess.com	Client ID	client_YAIlWKX@Infoexpress.com	
Password	•••••	Client Secret	•••••	
Query Interval (Seconds)	150		Test Connection	
(Seconds)			Show Query Result Data	
Policy				
CONDITION			FLAG	
✓ Flag devices running Webro	ot Agent		AV-managed	~
✓ Flag devices with Real-time	Shield disabled		AV-off	~
✓ Flag devices infected with n	nalware		infected	~
				~
			Save Cance	l Help

- Use "Test connection" button to validate settings
- You may leave Query interval and flagging conditions as default or modify as required
- Save this configuration

## **Setting and Enforcing Anti-Virus Compliance Policies**

Once the communications between the CGX Access appliance and Webroot API have been successfully tested, policies can be set to enforce compliance with AV policies.

Select the flags that should be assigned to devices that meet or fail the specific conditions.

#### Policy

CONDITION F	LAG	
Flag devices running Webroot Agent	AV-managed	~
✓ Flag devices with Real-time Shield disabled	AV-off	~
✓ Flag devices infected with malware	infected	~
✓ Flag devices USB shield disabled	dev-control-off	~
✓ Flag devices that have not connected in 7 days	AV-stale	~
✓ Flag devices with Firewall disabled	FW-off	~

There are several conditions you can select to monitor. When selected CGX Access will set flags on specific devices that meet or fail the conditions. Using Automated Device Classification policies, devices with specific flags can be assigned different roles.

Automated Device Classification Policy			
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	C Cancel Changes
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met		
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access		
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access		
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted		
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0 C ×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		0 C ×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access		0 C ×

The example above shows a device will be assigned a non-compliant role if it has been flagged as AVout-of-date. The placements of the rules are important and are evaluated top-down. The first rule that applies takes precedence.

**Tip:** The AV-managed flag is helpful in expediting deployments. Any device that is being managed by the corporate AV server can automatically be granted access to the network.

# **Orchestration with Syslog**

Firewalls, APT solutions, and other security solutions that are designed to monitor devices and network traffic can send event-based alerts for administrative action. CGX Access can receive event-based syslog messages from all types for security devices and take immediate action when necessary. If CGX Access receives an alert that a device has malware or misbehaving, we can restrict it immediately.

Any solution that can send event-based syslog messages can be configured to work with CGX Access.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Syslog Orchestration"

Edit Action X			
Syslog Integration			
Listen	<ul> <li>✓ Enable syslog integral</li> <li>on port(s)</li> <li>✓ UDP (514)</li> <li>✓ TLS Over TCP (6514)</li> </ul>	tion	
TLS Over TCP (6514) ORIGINATING SOURCES			
Enable	Event Name	Event Source IPs	
۷	SonicWall IPS-PortScanning 🔹	192.168.253.100	
	SonicWall IPS-TCPXmasTree	192.168.253.100	
	SonicWall IPS-EICAR-Test	192.168.253.100	
	SonicWall IPS-TCPNullFlag	192.168.253.100	
	Select 🔻		
	Select 🔻		
	Select 🔻		
	Select 🔹	-	
		Save Cancel Help	

From this screen, an Event can be enabled. The event source IP is the IP address of the security appliance that is sending the syslog message to CGX Access. Multiple IP addresses or IP ranges can be entered.

# **Syslog Event Creation**

CGX Access can work with any solution (Firewall, APT, IPS, SIEM, etc.) that can send event-driven syslog messages. To create new Events

- In CGX Access GUI go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Orchestration Events
- Click on "New Event"
- Select "Device event from syslog"

reate New Action			
Device event from an email alert	Define a device event from syslog		
Device event from syslog	Listens and handles Syslogs messages except those containing the skip pattern. If the search pattern is		
		ed for the IP noted in the syslog and the device is flagged as specified.	
	Event Name	SonicWall IPS-PortScanning	
	Search syslogs for	Possible Port Scan Detected	
		Case sensitive while searching for pattern	
	Skip syslogs containing	Regular Expression describing the pattern	
		Case sensitive while searching for exclusion	
	Type of information	IP Address	
	extracted	Hostname	
	Extract IP from	SRC:(%IP)	
		Case sensitive while searching for IP	
	Flag the device as	IPS-Event 🔻	

This dialog box defines how a device event can be triggered from a syslog. If the search pattern is found, this event is triggered for the IP found in the syslog message. To set up an event four sections must be configured

#### **Event Name**

Give this event a name that explains which device is sending the syslog and what is looking for.

### Search syslogs for

The system will search for Syslog messages that match the keywords specified here. For example: "ID=attack detected". Regular expressions can be used but don't include "/" at the beginning and the end.

### **Type of Information Extracted**

Select whether the syslog message should be scanned for an IP address or Hostname.

If using IP: The system will extract the IP address of the offending endpoint using the predefined macro: (%IP) for the IP address's position. For example, we will specify: "SRC=(%IP)" if the IP value can be found after SRC:=..."

If using Hostname: The system will extract the hostname of the offending endpoint using after a keyword. For example, hostname:

#### Flag the Device as

Choose a flag that should be assigned to the offending device if the event is triggered. Using Device Classification policy, the device can then be automatically quarantined.

Custom flags names can be created under Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings  $\rightarrow$  Names Used by Policies

# **Orchestration - Email Alerts**

CGX Access can receive e-mail messages from all types for security devices and take immediate action when necessary. If CGX Access receives an email alert that a device has malware or is misbehaving, we can restrict it immediately.

Any solution that can send email messages can be configured to work with CGX Access.

- Verify an inbound e-mail server has been configured See Page 19
- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Email Orchestration"

Edit Action ×			
Email Ale	Email Alert Integration		
Sender's	addresses	Enable email alert integration	
Que	ery interval (seconds)	120	
ORIGINATI	NG SOURCES		
Enable	Event Nam	ie	
×	Sophos –I	nfection 🔻	
	Select	•	
	Select	•	
	Colored State	- · ·	
		Save Cancel Help	

- From this screen, an Event can be enabled.
- To limited which e-mail addresses are allowed to send an e-mail alert to the CGX Access appliance, specify the approved e-mails in the Sender's Address section. When blank all addresses are allowed.
- The Query interval specifies how often CGX Access checks the mail server for new e-mail alerts.

# **Email Event Creation**

CGX Access can work with any solution (Firewall, APT, IPS, SIEM, etc.) that can send e-mail messages. To create new Events

- In CGX Access GUI go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Orchestration Events
- Click on "New Event"
- Select "Device event from an email alert"

Create New Action		×	
Device event from an email alert	Define a device event from an email alert		
Device event from syslog	Listens and handles email alerts except those containing the skip pattern. If the search pattern is found an event is triggered. When triggered, the IP or hostname noted in the email will be flagged as specified.		
	Event Name	Sophos - Infection	
	Search email alerts for	Virus/spyware	
		Case sensitive while searching for pattern	
	Skip email alerts containing	Regular Expression describing the pattern	
		Case sensitive while searching for exclusion	
	Type of information extracted	<ul> <li>IP Address</li> <li>Hostname</li> </ul>	
	Extract Hostname from	Machine:	
		Case sensitive while searching for keyword	
	Flag the device as	infected •	
		Save Cancel Help	

This dialog box defines how a device event can be triggered from an e-mail. If the search pattern is found, this event is triggered for the IP or hostname found in the e-mail message. To set up an event four sections must be configured

#### **Event Name**

Give this event a name that explains which device is sending the e-mail and why.

### Search email alerts for

The system will search the email messages for keywords specified here. For example: "Virus/Spyware". Regular expressions can be used but don't include "/" at the beginning and the end.

### **Type of Information Extracted**

Select whether the email message should be read for an IP address or Hostname.

If using Hostname: The system will extract the hostname after reading a keyword. For example, if Machine: is specified as the keyword, any name following it will be assumed as the hostname.

If using IP: The system will extract the IP address of the offending endpoint using the predefined macro: (%IP) for the IP address's position. For example, we will specify: "SRC=(%IP)" if the IP value follows after SRC:=.

#### Flag the Device as

Choose a flag that should be assigned to the offending device if the event is triggered. Using Device Classification policy, the device can then be automatically quarantined.

Custom flags names can be created under Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings  $\rightarrow$  Names Used by Policies

# **Malware Lateral Spread Protection - Zero-Day**

With its layer-2 visibility, CGX Access can detect devices making connection attempts to other devices within the same segment. If an end-user device suddenly attempts to connect to an excessive number of devices on the same subnet or tries to connect to Dark IPs that at not active on the network, this is suspicious behavior. This behavior is indicative of a network scan being performed or malware trying to probe the network in an attempt to spread. Easy NAC can detect this behavior and immediately quarantine this device so it can't spread malware laterally on the network.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Click on "Malware Lateral Spread Protection Zero-Day"

Edit Action		×
Malware Lateral Spread Protection – Zero Day		
MALWARE LATERAL SPREAD PROTECTION PROTECTS AGAINST WORMS, MALWARE DETECTING DEVICES MAKING UNUSUAL CONNECTIONS ATTEMPTS TO OTHER DEVI LAYER-2 ARP TRAFFIC IS INVISIBLE TO MOST SECURITY SOLUTIONS BUT IS AN E DETECTION, MALWARE CAN BE PREVENTED FROM SPREADING OVER THE NETWOR	ICES ON THE SAME LOCAL SUBNET. ARLY WARNING SIGN OF TROUBLE, WITH FAST	
Enable Integration		
Query Interval 60 (Seconds)		
CONDITION	FLAG	
Flag devices trying to connect to excessive # of used IPs	Scan-detected •	
100 different IPs within one minute is considered excessive		
Flag devices trying to connect to excessive # of unused IPs	Dark-IP-scan 🔻	
20 different IPs within one minute is excessive		
	Save Cancel Help	

When enabled. devices attempting connection attempts to an excessive number of hosts will be flagged as "Scan-detected". While devices attempting connection attempts to unused IP addresses will be flagged as "Dark-IP-Scan"

# **Policy-Based Response**

When the "Scan-detected" flag and \ or "Dark-IP-Scan" flag is assigned to a device, the CGX Access can take quarantine actions based on Automated Device Classification policies.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Automated Device Classification
- Add Rule to take preferred actions when a device is flagged "Scan-detected" and "Dark-IP-Scan"

Automated Device Classification Policy					
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	C Canco	el Chai	nges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Has any of these flags: Scan-detected Has any of these flags: Dark-IP-scan	Set device role to High-Risk		Ø	Ø	×
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted		0	C	×

- The new rule should be dragged near the top of the list, so it has higher priority over other sets of conditions
- **Tip:** By specifying the flags on two separate lines it creates an "And" requirement, where both the "Scan-detected" flag and "Dark-IP-scan" flag both needs to be present. Requiring both flags to be present can reduce false positives.

# **Clearing Zero-day Events**

Once a device has been restricted, it will be necessary to clear the event so the device can have network access again.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Visibility  $\rightarrow$  Alerts and Notifications
- Click "Devices with Events"
- Select the device(s) that should be cleared, Select the "Clear event" option and Apply

De	evices with ever	nts										Back Refresh B	Export	Hel
hov	w Report Filter										upda	ited at Thu Jun 042	2020 18	8:33:4
Cle	ear events	•	Apply to selected de	evices										
ota	al # of devices: 1			_			м	ake it a custom report	Add a schedule report	Devices Per I	Page 400	Page 1 of 1. First	ee [1] 5	
	MAC	Hostname	Events	Access Group	Roles	Location	IP Address	os	Flags / Lists	Last Seen	Access Status	Grant Access		G
•	00:0C:29:4B:70:2E	managed01	2020-06-04 18:33:40 arpscan (Scan- detected) 2020-06-04 18:33:40 darkip (Dark-IP-scan)	restricted	High- Risk	VM demo	192.168.253.54	Windows 7 Professional 6.1 Build 7601 Service Pack 1	virtual AD-managed AV- managed Scan-detected Dark-IP-scan	2020-06- 04 18:32:48	•	•••	6	E

# **Handling Exceptions**

For network monitoring, it may be necessary to configure exceptions on some devices. To ignore Zeroday behavioral detection, you can flag the allowed devices as "arp-scan-ignoring" and "darkip-scanignoring". These flags can be set using the Device Manager or Device with Events report.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Visibility  $\rightarrow$  Alerts and Notifications
- Click "Devices with Events"
- Select the device(s) that should be exempted, Select the "Ignore Zero-Day Behavioral Detection" option and Apply

De	evices with ever	nts										Back Refresh E	Export	Help
Sho	w Report Filter										upda	ted at Thu Jun 04 2	020 18	8:42:56
lgr	nore Zero-Day Behav	rioral Dete 🔻	Both		,	Ap	ply to selected de	wices						
Tota	al # of devices: 1						м	ake it a custom report	Add a schedule report	Devices Per I	Page 100	Page 1 of 1. First	<< [1] >	⊷ Last
	MAC	Hostname	Events	Access Group	Roles	Location	IP Address	OS	Flags / Lists	Last Seen	Access Status	Grant Access		ß
×	00:0C:29:4B:70:2E	managed01	2020-06-04 18:34:59 arpscan (Scan- detected) 2020-06-04 18:34:59 darkip (Dark-IP-scan)	restricted	High- Risk	VM demo	192.168.253.54	Windows 7 Professional 6.1 Build 7601 Service Pack 1	virtual AD-managed AV- managed Scan-detected Dark-IP-scan	2020-06- 04 18:42:45	•		6	

Note: by default, devices flagged as Network Infrastructure are exempt from zero-day checks.

# **Agent Support**

Easy NAC was designed to be an agentless solution. However, agent licenses are optional and can be used for more in-depth compliance checks, automatic remediation, and other capabilities. When using agents, you can also consider a hybrid deployment model, where laptops needing stronger security checks use the agents, while desktops use the agentless approach. The table below summarizes the differences in these approaches.

	CGX Access - Agent	CGX Access – Agentless
Detection	Agent would detect changes within 10 seconds	Compliance check with integration module depends on the re-check interval
Supported OS	<ul><li>Microsoft Windows</li><li>Apple MacOS</li><li>Linux</li></ul>	The Operating Systems supported by Integration solution(s)
Compliance checks	Compliance check can be customized to Include but not limited to the followings: Running Process Registry values Files and locations Ini files and contents Machine names and OS check Authentication	Agentless solution – Integrations with AD, 3 <sup>rd</sup> -party AV, Patch, and WMI
End-user compliance communication	Pop-up Message	HTTP Redirection
Real-time Wi-Fi adapters control	When connected to any wired network that has connectivity to CGX-Access (ie. Corporate Network). The wireless network adapter can be disabled automatically. It would be re-enabled once wired NIC is disconnected	N/A Can use Windows Connection Manager as a substitute
Automatic Remediation	When a compliance check fails, a remediation action can be kicked in. It includes running scripts or binary in the host that has the agent installed. With or without administrative rights.	N/A

# Working with Agents

Easy NAC virtual appliances come with default agents and default polices that can be used for testing or as a baseline to start building your custom compliance policies.

By default, Automated Device Classification policies will assign a device passing an agent audit with full access. While a device failing audit would be assigned a failed-agent-audit role. The order of the policies is important, so in some environments, it may be necessary to drag these policies up for higher priority.

• In CGX Access GUI go to Policies  $\rightarrow$  Automated Device Classification

Automated Device Classification Policy						
Classify devices based on their characteristics	C Activate	🕑 Can	el Ch	ang	es	
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met					
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access					
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted					
Has any of these flags: SIEM-Event, IPS-Event, infected, FW-Event, APT- Event	Set device role to restricted			00	5	×
Has any of these flags: stale-device, patch-pending, patch-failed, non- compliant, AV-out-of-date, AV-off	Set device role to non-compliant		6	0	5	×
Has any of these flags: managed-device, full-access, AV-managed, AD- managed, network-infrastructure, router, switch, printer	Set device role to full-access			0	5	x
Failed Agent Audit	Set device role to failed-agent-audit		6	) (	5)[	×
Passed Agent Audit	Set device role to full-access		6	00	5)[	×
Completed Guest or Device Registration Has any of these flags: byod	Set device role to BYOD		6	0	5	x

When assigned a "failed-agent-audit" role the device will be assigned "restrict-agent" ACL. By default, restrict-agent ACL blocks all traffic except DNS, DHCP, and the agent traffic over port TCP 11698.

Edit Action		×
Configure NAC rule	s for access group	^
Access group	restrict-agent	
Condition	Apply ACL 🗸	
ACL rules	ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='UDP' AND PORT==53 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==53 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='UDP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==67 ALLOW WHEN PROTO=='TCP' AND PORT==11698 DENY WHEN TRUE	

It is recommended the default "restrict-agent" ACL be edited to allow access to approved remediation resources such as the AV server, patch server, etc.

# **Hosting Agents**

Easy NAC virtual appliances come with default agents that will meet most customer requirements. To make these agents available for use:

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Global Settings  $\rightarrow$  CyberGatekeeper Agents
- Adjust your Captive portal settings to allow the download of the agents

URL Others	
Download Links	
Agent Hosting	On CGX Access (Remediation 1 🗸
	Upload Files
Prefix	https://10.160.0.102/static/
Windows x64	cga64.msi 🗸
Windows x86	cga32.msi 👻
MacOS	cgainst.zip 🗸
Linux	cga 🗸
On-demand	OnDemandAgent.exe

To host agents on the appliance, it will be necessary to use the Remediation IP address. Once the above settings are configured; you can decide when to show the agent installers to your end-users.

Show Links	
	After successful guest registration / authentication.
	After employee registers device.
	On the main landing page.
	✓ On Remediation page.
	Show all configured agent links.

Based on requirements, you can choose when to display the agent installers. This would be helpful for special situations where you require guest, consultant or BYOD devices to install agents for network access.

The appliance will only show the agent type appropriate for the Operating System, so a guest with a MAC computer will only be shown the OSX agent. If you want to display all the available agent options, you can check "Show all configured agent links".

(⇐) ↔ @ http://192.168.253.222/: ♀ ▾ ♥ @ Network Status ×	<b>↑</b> ★ ‡
MyCompany	
Network Access Control	
You have reached this page because your device is untrusted. For assistance please contact helpdesk.	the
Access restricted	
🧼 Download Agent x64	

# **Installing Agents**

The CyberGatekeeper Agents are designed to install silently. Once the installer is run the agent will install silently with no configuration options or reboots required. The Windows installers are approximately 8-10 MB in size. The MAC OSX agent installer is approximately 4 MB. These sizes make is quick to download and install. When installed and running the agents will use 4-6 MB or RAM and utilize ~1% CPU every 30 seconds.

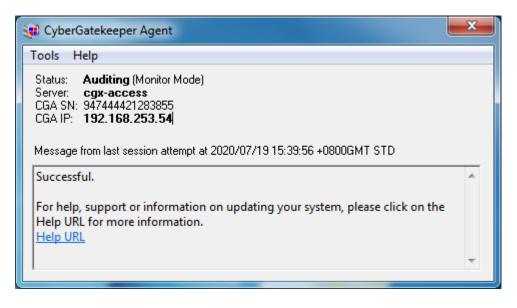
Most organizations choose to use a software deployment tool or AD Group policy with a computer startup script to install the agent automatically for their managed devices. Contact InfoExpress support for a sample script.

In the case of manual deployment, local administrative rights are required.

• Right-click the installer file and chose to "Run as administrator"

Name	^	Date modified	Туре	Size
😽 cgamsi32		7/19/2020 3·12 PM	Application	8,339 KB
		Open		
	<b>(</b>	Run as administrator		
		Troubleshoot compatibility		

- There will be no prompts or confirmations. Allow 30-60 seconds for the install to be completed in the background
- When finished an icon in the system tray will be visible. When double clicked the agent viewer will show the current status



### **On-demand Agents** (Recommended for Consultants)

The normal CyberGatekeeper agents are designed to be installed on managed devices, and requires administrative rights to be installed. Once installed, this agent will be started in the background to provide transparent and continuous checks. However, it may be desirable to perform similar compliance checks on unmanaged computers used by consultants. For this requirement, you can the on-demand agents.

A key difference with the on-demand agent, is that it doesn't require admin rights to install, because it doesn't get installed. The on-demand agent is 2-3 MB executable that runs in memory until the agent viewer is closed. Once the agent viewer is closed, the agent checks are stopped, and the consultant will need to run the executable again if she needs to reconnect to the network. By default, a device passing audit will continue to be passing audit for 5 minutes, after this agent has been closed.

Requirements \ Limitations:

- Supported on Windows 64-bit Operating Systems only (Windows 7 and Windows 10)
- Supports Windows Security Center and Windows Update plug-ins
- Nic Manager Plug-in or any plug-in requiring admin rights is not supported
- Automatic Remediation is not supported

# **Agent Compliance Policies**

Easy NAC virtual appliances come with default agent compliance policies that have been pushed to the appliance. These default policies will provide checks for common AV solutions:

- Anti-Virus Installed
- Anti-Virus Running
- AV Up-to-date
- Real-time scanning enabled
- Windows Updated Enabled
- Recent Microsoft updates

These policies are a good starting point, but it would be recommended every customer adjust these policies to meet their specific requirements. For example, if your organization's endpoint security is TrendMicro, then it may only be necessary to check for this brand.

To adjust the policies, it will be necessary to install a CyberGatekeeper Policy Manager. Contact InfoExpress support or your partner for a copy of the CGPM installer and a copy of the of the Easy NAC Default Settings installer.

- 1. Install Policy Manager
- 2. Keep Policy Manager closed
- 3. Run Easy NAC Default settings

**Note:** If you plan to use the default agents, it will be necessary to run the Easy NAC Default settings installer to ensure the agents and Policy Manager have the correct shared settings.

# **Policy Manager**

Policy Manager, also called CGPM (CyberGatekeeper Policy Manager) is a Windows-based application that can be installed on any 64bit Microsoft Windows Operating System.

The Policy Manager application is used for:

- Creating compliance tests
- Creating compliance policies
- Uploading compliance policies to CGX Access appliances
- Building agents for different operating systems

The sections below will serve as a QuickStart guide and Best Practices Guide on how to make use of policy manager to create the desire agent checks.

Tip: For complete details of the CyberGatekeeper Policy Manager, please refer to the Policy Manager Reference Manual.

# Policies

The **Policies** creates and edits audit policies. Audit policies let administrators specify what applications, configurations, and systems should be allowed or denied into the corporate network.

ά×	4 10-Windows x64.def ×	
P ×     I_Recent Windows Updates     10-Windows x64     10-Windows x86     15-Supported-mac0S-10-13     20-Supported-Linux0S     99-Deny All	In Windows x64.def       X         When to Use This Policy (All Conditions Must Be Met)       X         WHEN Any Windows (x64)       X         Image: A strain of the strain o	< When < When Not Delete C Require C Prohibit C Desire C Not Desire Delete
	Remediation Message Message: Windows Automatic updates not enabled Pop up Message on User's System: No	Edit

A policy consists of a When Section and a Requirements section. Each requirement section can have their own remediation section. The When Section indicates which remote systems should be governed by this policy.

If this policy's When Section does not match the audit information from the remote system, the next policy will be checked. If the When Section matches the audit information from the remote system, the Requirements Section is checked to see whether the remote system should be given access to the corporate network.

#### When to Use This Policy...

The When Section contains conditions consisting of **WHEN** or **WHENNOT** commands followed by test conditions. The **WHEN** command passes if the test condition is true. The **WHENNOT** command passes if the test condition is not true. All of the When Conditions in the policy must match the audit information for the policy to be valid (All conditions are ANDed).

Ordered policies are policies starts with a number in their names. They are arranged in alphanumerical order. The order in which policies will be evaluated can be seen in the list of policies on CGPM. An agent can take only 1 ordered policy at a time. Once a match is found in the When Section, the policy would be taken by this agent and no other policies would be checked.

### **Policies Best Practices**

• It is a best practice to name the polices with a numbered prefix. This way, you would be able to change the priority of when a policy gets evaluated by changing its prefix number easily.

For example, an ordered policy named **80-Windows.def** would be evaluated before another policy named **90-Windows.def** because the system would evaluate the policies in alphanumeric order.

• The more conditions that you have defined in the When Section, the policy should be evaluated first. You can do so by changing the name of the policy as suggested above.

For example, if your **90-Windows.def** has two When conditions defined (When Any Windows and When in IP range 192.168.0.0/24) and your **80-Windows.def** has 1 When condition defined (When Any Windows).

In this case, all your agents would be getting the **80-Windows.def** because it has a more generic When condition (only 1).

The correct way to do it, is to rename the **90-Windows.def** to, for example, **70-Windows.def**. This would make the policy list higher alphanumerically and hence be evaluated first.

- If you have a mixed 32bit and 64bit of Windows OSes that still need to be supported. It would be best to separate them into two sets of policies. Ie. One for 32bit and another one for 64bit.
- Policies created are stored in the Policy Manager installation folder, it is recommended to have a backup of the whole policy manager folder which is in C:\Program Files\InfoExpress\CyberGatekeeper Policy Manager.

## **Requirements to Pass a Policy**

The Requirements Section contains requirements consisting of **REQUIRE**, **PROHIBIT**, **DESIRE** or **NOTDESIRE** commands followed by test conditions.

The **REQUIRE** command is used to ensure certain conditions are present and passes if the test condition(s) are true. If any **REQUIRE** command is not met, the agent would FAIL to pass this policy and hence the audit.

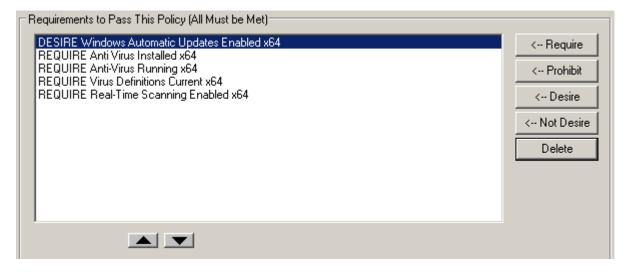
The **PROHIBIT** command is used to prevent certain conditions and passes if the test condition is not true. If any **PROHIBIT** command is not met, the agent would FAIL to pass this policy and hence the audit.

The **DESIRE** command is used to check if certain conditions are present. If the test condition(s) are true, it would pass the policy. However, even in the case the **DESIRE** command is not met, it would still pass. This is helpful if compliance information is desired, but no quarantine action should be performed.

The **NOTDESIRE** command is used to check if certain conditions are not present and passes if the test condition is not true. However, eve in the case the **NOTDESIRE** command fails, it would still pass. This is helpful if compliance information is desired, but no quarantine action should be performed.

### **Requirements Priority**

All the tests, when added to the policy, would be the requirements. These requirements would all be evaluated from top down.



For example, as per the screenshot above, DESIRE "Windows Automatic Updates Enabled" would be checked first, then followed by REQUIRE Anti-Virus Installed, then REQUIRE Anti-Virus Running, etc.

When a REQUIRE or PROHIBIT test fails, the audit would be marked as FAIL and any tests that sit below would not be checked.

However, because of the nature of the DESIRE or NOTDESIRE command, it would still be pass audit, even if it fails this test, so the next requirement would still be checked.

For example, if REQUIRE Antivirus Running failed, it would be marked as failing this test. The agent would not check for any test below, in this case the REQUIRE Virus Definitions Current and the REQUIRE Real-Time Scanning Enabled would not be checked.

#### **Requirement Best Practices**

• It is recommended to put the DESIRE and NOTDESIRE commands in the requirements to the top by using the arrow button. This way, we ensured all these tests are checked properly before REQUIRE and PROHIBIT commands.



• You can change the command type by right-clicking on a command. For example, change from DESIRE to REQUIRE.



• Please check if there are perquisites for tests and arrange the order of these tests accordingly.

For example, a test check for Antivirus running should be checked first before the Antivirus signature is not older than 7 days. It is because the antivirus program might not be able to update the signature if it is not even running.

## Remediation

If an agent fails a policy requirement, the administrator has the option of running a remediation action, displaying a remediation message to the user or both.

- The remediation action can be configured to bring the device back into compliance so that it can successfully audit against the policy.
- The remediation message pops up a dialog box with informational or instructional information to users.
- A unique remediation action and/or pop-up message can be configured for each of the requirements set in a policy.

To configure the remediation, please highlighted the corresponding test in the requirement section and then click the Edit button. This would bring the **Edit Remediation Option** dialog box.

Edit Remediation Option	×
Remediation Message	ОК
Anti-Virus not running	Cancel
Pop up Message on User's System	
Remediation Link (e.g. http://xxxx , \\server\path\file)	
http://192.168.253.100/fix/startsophos.vbs	
Remediation Link Name Shown on Agent Viewer	
Command Arguments	
🔽 Run Remediation for Desktop Agent	
Run Remediation with Admin Rights	
Run Remediation for Web Agent (for Windows only)	
Run only once a user has logged in (for Windows only)	
Show Download Progress Bar	
Advanced Options (for Windows only)	

### **Pop-up Messages**

The Remediation Message box can be edited to include any remediation message that the administrator deems appropriate. For example, "No authorized antivirus software is found".

Messages do not pop up by default. In order to have the message displayed on the agent upon a failed requirement, the "Pop up Message on User's System" check box should be selected.

An URL can be embedded in the remediation message to direct the user to further resources to help provide further information or this URL can be put in the Remediation Link box.

### **Remediation Actions**

The remediation action must be entered under the **Remediation Link** input box. It can contain either a URL tag or UNC tag (Universal Naming Convention). The tag points to a file that will be run on the end user system if that endpoint fails the requirement.

The file that the tag points to can be any file type that can be run on the hosts system: common file types include executables (.exe), Windows scripts (.vbs, .bat, .cmd). If the remediation scripts or executables require parameters (arguments) they can be entered under "Command Arguments". Multiple parameters should be separated by spaces.

For example: URL Tag: http://192.168.253.128/fix/ResShieldOn.bat UNC Tag: \\server\path\ResShieldOn.vbs

Even if you defined a remediation script URL in the Remediation Link, it may still require the user to click on the link to download and run the script manually.

### **Auto-remediation**

To provide a better end user experience, the remediation action can be configured to run automatically without any user intervention.

Also, the user privilege that the remediation script runs would also be configurable.

To allow the remediation script to run automatically with the current logged on user privilege, select the **Run remediation for Desktop Agent**.

To allow the remediation script to run automatically but with local administrative rights, select both the **Run remediation for Desktop Agent** and **Run Remediation with Admin Rights**.

Note: Only standard Windows Agent and Mac OS Agent support remediation actions.

### **Remediation Best Practices**

- It is recommended to configure the remediation action via an URL instead of a UNC path. Because the agent runs with the local system account on the endpoint. If a network resource is accessed, it might not have the sufficient privilege. You can host the remediation scripts on the CGX Access appliance or Central Visibility Manager
- The remediation action is best to configure to run without any user intervention.

For example, running a batch file (.bat) as a remediation script is supported but it might trigger a command prompt to be shown on the user's endpoint. It would look malicious to users. However, when running it with a VB Script, it can do the same remediation action but can be configured in the script to hide any user feedback (more transparent user experience).

• Depending on the nature of the remediation script, the necessary privilege would need to be configured properly for the script to run properly. For example, if the script requires administrative privilege (restarting a service), running the script automatically with the user privilege alone might not work for everyone.

# **Using Active Directory User Group in Automated Device Classification Policy**

It is possible to use Active Directory User Group of a current logged on user in an agent installed device as a condition for the Automated Device Classification Policy.

### Prerequisites

- DNS server and Domain Settings for CGX Access
- Configure Active Directory User Group
- CGX Access to be joined as a Domain Member
- Additional "Authentication Plugin" in CyberGatekeeper Agent

### DNS server and Domain Settings for CGX Access

The DNS server, hostname and domain name of CGX Access should be properly configured as the Active Directory Server. It is necessary for the CGX Access to be joined as a Domain Member.

IP / Netmask	Gateway	
10.160.0.100/255.255.255.0	10.160.0.1	
1		
10.160.0.200		
cgx-access		
easynac.demo		
	10.160.0.100/255.255.255.0 / 10.160.0.200 cgx-access	10.160.0.100/255.255.255.0       10.160.0.1         /       10.160.0.200         cgx-access       10.160.0.200

In the example above, the CGX Access's hostname is configured as cgx-access and the Domain Name of the Active Directory is configured as "easynac.demo". The DNS server is pointing to the Active Directory Server's IP address.

#### **Configure Active Directory User Group**

To configure the Active Directory User Group, the following steps are required

- 1) Configure the Description of the corresponding group in Active Director as "InfoExpress". Below is an example of a User Group called "Tech" to be used in CGX Access.
- 2) Add Active Directory Users to the corresponding Active Directory Group.

Active Directory Users and Compute	ters		
File Action View Help	Tech Properties General Members Member Of Managed By	?	×
<ul> <li>Active Directory Users and Com</li> <li>Saved Queries</li> <li>Baynac.demo</li> <li>Builtin</li> <li>Computers</li> <li>Domain Controllers</li> <li>ForeignSecurityPrincipal:</li> <li>Managed Service Accour</li> <li>Users</li> <li>HR</li> </ul>	General Members Member Of Managed By         Image: Complex Stress         Group name (pre-Windows 2000):         Description:       InfoExpress         Email:         Group scope         Opmain local         Image: Operation         Universal		 
< >	OK Cancel		bly

- 3) Add the Group Name of AD to be used in the CGX Access.
  - a. In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings
  - b. Click the "Name used by Policy" of Configuration Settings
  - c. Add the Active Directory User Group to be used as follow

Names Used by Pol	licios				
Names used by Por	licies				
	Note: All names are ca	se sensitive			
Access Groups(ACLs)	byod-access consultant excluded full-access guest-access High-Risk limited	Â	AD/LDAP User Groups	Sales Tech Consultant HR	li

d. Click Save to confirm

#### Joining CGX Access to Active Directory

• In CGX Access GUI, go o Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings

Active Directory Domain Settings:	
CGX Access is not joined to Active Directory Domain	Configure

• Click Configure under the "Active Directory Domain Settings" and configure the Domain NETBIOS name and Doman Controller.

Active Directory Domain Settings				
CGX is not Joined to Active	Directory DOMAIN.			
Parameters				
Hostname:	cgx-access	* Can be set only on CGX Management page		
Domain name: easynac.demo		* Can be set only on CGX Management page		
Domain NETBIOS name:	EASYNAC			
Domain Controller: 10.160.0.200				
Join domain Leave dor	nain Test domain Join Show keytab			

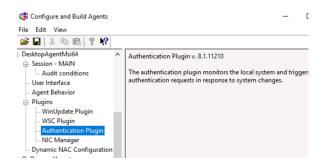
• Click Join Domain and type the Domain Administrator credential into the dialog box.



• Click OK to confirm.

#### CyberGatekeeper Agent Authentication Plugin

When building the CyberGatekeeper Agent installer in Policy Manager, please kindly add the "Authentication Plugin" as shown below before building the agent installer.



To confirm the Authentication Plugin has been added to the agent installer, goto CyberGatekeeper Agent GUI, click Help  $\rightarrow$  About to ensure the AuthPlugin has been added.



#### Add the User Group as a condition in Automated Device Classification Policy

To create a rule under the Automated Device Classification Policy with the "User Group" added as a condition. Select the User Group that you would like to check and assign it to the corresponding device role.

Device Authentication		
Device Access	Criteria	Match any of the groups checked $$
Device Flag		
Device IP Address	Check All Applicable User Groups	Sales
Device List	User Groups	Tech
Device MAC Address		Consultant HGM
Device OS		
Check Device's Online Status		
User Group		
Device Status		

The rules are examples of how the User Group can be used as part of the check and assign to different roles based on the user logged on.

Automated Device Classification Policy	i				
Classify devices based on their characteristics		C Activate	Cance Cance	l Char	nges
Conditions	Actions taken when conditions are met				
Device is on routerlist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on whitelist	Set device role to full-access				
Device is on blacklist	Set device role to restricted				
Device location matches any of VPN IP Range Passed Agent Audit User is a member of any of these groups: Sales	Set device role to Sales		0	ß	×
Device location matches any of VPN IP Range Passed Agent Audit User is a member of any of these groups: Tech	Set device role to Tech		0	ß	×

## **Troubleshooting Agents**

#### **Installation Issues**

Sometimes users can face problems with installing the agent on a windows PC for various reasons which may be specific to user environment. You can use the following command line options to troubleshoot installation issue.

From the admin command prompt type:

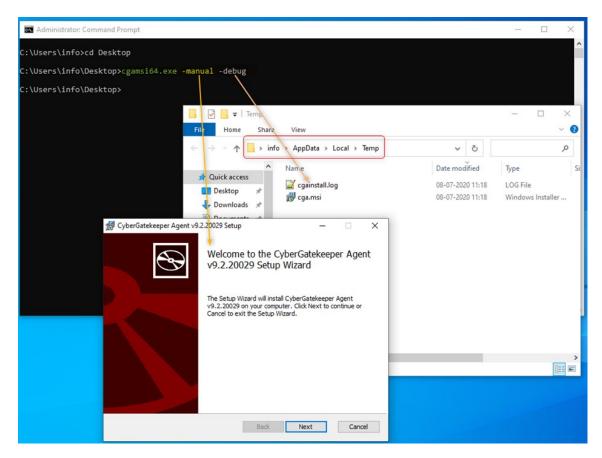
cgamsi32.exe or cgamsi64.exe and use any of the options below:

-debug	Generates installation log at %tmp%\cgainstall.log. You can send this log to support
	when requiring assistance for installation issues
-log	Enables agent debug logging in agent install dir [filenames=IEXCGAxxxxx.log]
-manual	Interactive install. Shows install window and progress.

For Example:

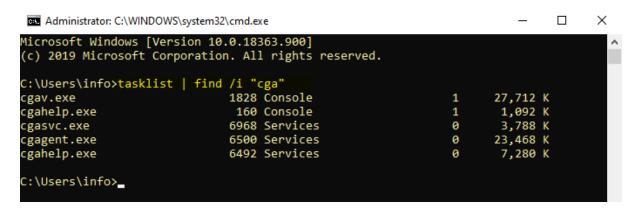
```
> cgamsi64.exe -manual -debug
```

This is will start a manual installation with install progress & enable installation debug logging file at %tmp%\cgainstall.log



Once agent is installed, you can check if agent service is running.

```
>tasklist | find /i "cga"
```



Note: For problems installing Linux agents, please contact support for the Linux agent install guide.

### **Connection Issues**

Outbound Ports use by CyberGatekeeper Agent:

TCP 11698: Agent Connections to CGX Access appliance TCP 11697: Agent (NIC Manager) to CGX Access appliance

Once agent is installed correctly, there may be problems with agent connecting to the CGX Access appliance. The easiest way to check error messages is to open the agent window and note the message/warning. By default, the CyberGatekeeper agents are configured to talk with hostnames cgx-access and cgx-access.local. These values can be changed when building agents. Take note of the CGX-Access IP-address and/or Hostname configured in the agent. (Henceforth referred to as CGXA]

Error/warning seen on CGAgent window	Command to execute on end point CLI/Shell	Objective	Resolution
Failed. Cannot resolve hostname <cgxa></cgxa>	> nslookup <cgxa></cgxa>	To check if DNS is correctly resolving CGXA hostname. [ <i>if hostname is</i> used while agent building]	Check is your DNS is configured to resolve CGXA hostname
Failed. Unable to connect to CyberGatekeeper <cgxa></cgxa>	> Ping <cgxa></cgxa>	to check CGXA reachability (if your firewall allows ICMP)	Check if agent or that network segment can reach CGXA appliance
Failed. Unable to connect to CyberGatekeeper <cgxa></cgxa>	> telnet CGXA 11698	To check if agent can connect to audit port TCP 11698 on CGXA	Check if Anti-Virus or firewall is blocking TCP port 11698
Cannot establish session with a server from a different administrative domain or server is disabled.			See "different administrative domain error" below.
Failed. CyberGatekeeper indicated failure in audit session.			Agent has failed compliance. Check rules that agent should pass. Checking Device Manager - Reports would help identify why this agent failed compliance.

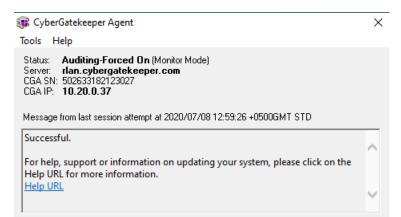
**Different Administrative Domain error:** This error occurs when the agent and the policy on the CGX Access were built from a different Policy Manager. It can also occur if no policy has been pushed to the CGX Access appliance. The agent and the appliance share a secret key, and this key is generated and provided by the Policy Manager. It is included when the agent is built, and when the policy is uploaded to the appliance. If the keys do not match, the client cannot connect to the appliance.

This can be fixed by any of the following:

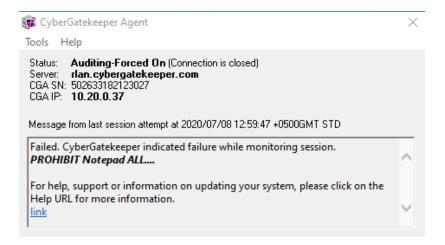
- Uploading the policy to the appliance, from the same Policy Manager that built the agent.
- Import the correct Shared Settings into the Policy Manager and re-upload the policies to CGX Access. (If using default agents, contact support for the default Easy NAC shared settings).
- Re-building and re-distributing the agent from the same system that uploaded the current policy.

Once agent connects to CGX Access appliance successfully, you should see "successful" message in agent window.

• When passing audit (compliant)



• When failing audit (non-compliant)



# **Advanced Configuration Options**

## **Administration Permissions**

CGX Access can query the Active Directory server to validate permissions for administrators to access the management GUI. CGX Access uses management accounts stored in Active Directory. Different levels of access are given to admin users based on their AD group membership.

### **Administrator roles**

Initially there are three roles for administrators configured on a CGX Access: CGX-Admin, CGX-AdminRO and GRM-Sponsor. "CGX-Admin" is a default role that cannot be modified. It has full privileges. "CGX-AdminRO" is the one shown below and can be used for limited administrative privileges. GRM-Sponsor is a group allowed to sponsor guest access. Each permission role can be configured with different access rights. Permission roles may be deleted or added.

Roles correspond to groups defined in Active Directory, i.e. the administrative user uses their Active Directory credentials to authenticate and is given access based on the group they are a member of in Active Directory. In order for an Active Directory user to be placed into the CGX-Admin role on the CGX Access, the user must be member of an AD group of the same name.

Permission Manager		
Role CGX-AdminRO  Add Delete Permission		Help
Accounts		
Can Create Account, Set Permission	No access	
Can force other users out on conflict	🔾 Yes 💿 No	
System/Operations		
Configuration	No access	
Policies	No access      Readonly      R/W	
Guests/BYOD devices		
Access to Device Registration Methods	No access      Readonly      R/W	
Allow to Sponsor		
	All guest types	
	Sponsor Registers Guest Account	
	Guest Registers Themselves	
	Guest Registers for an Event	
	Consultant Register Themselves	
Access to Device Registration Manager	No access      Readonly      R/W	
Profiler		
Access to Policies	No access      Readonly      R/W	
Reports		
Device Manager	No access	

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Permission Manager

These roles correspond to groups in Active Directory.

### Create CGX Access admin groups in Active directory

Using the "Active Directory Users and Computers" MMC:

• Add the groups CGX-Admin, CGX-AdminRO and GRM-Sponsor. Please note that upper/lower case is significant when creating these groups.

Active Directory Users and Com	puters			
File Action View Help				
(= =) 🖄 📷 🔏 🗂 🗙 🛛	1 🖸 🗟 🖥	T   😤 速 🛅 🎙	7 🗾 🔽	
Active Directory Users and Comput Saved Queries DemoCGX.infoexpress.com Builtin Computers Domain Controllers SreignSecurityPrincipals Managed Service Accounts Users	8	nbers Member Of CGX-Admin (pre-Windows 2000):	Description Managed By Group type Group type Security Distribution	

• As a minimum add one account (your own) to the CGX-Admin group

If you create a new account make sure it's not set with "User must change password at next logon" as that will prevent the account from being used on the CGX Access until the user changes the password.

### **Test AD connection**

- Log out of the CGX Access admin GUI
- Log in with your AD domain account

If you can authenticate using your AD credentials, then the CGX Access is successfully communicating with the AD domain. If your AD credentials do not work double check that the address of the LDAP server and the account suffix was entered correctly. Also, double check that the changes/additions you made to AD groups have been synchronized to the DC that the CGX Access is connecting to (i.e. the host or IP entered).

# **Configuring Radius for CGX Admin Login or BYOD Authentication**

### **Radius Server Configuration**

**Note:** Free RADIUS server was used in this guide. For specific instructions for Microsoft NPS Radius server please see <u>Appendix F</u>

- On Radius, Configure CGX Access as a client to allow query
- Add VSA id 2939 in dictionary with following attributes

```
VENDOR InfoExpress 2939
BEGIN-VENDOR InfoExpress
ATTRIBUTE iexgroup 11 string
END-VENDOR InfoExpress
```

• Add user, and assign a group. See more on groups in CGX settings later in this guide.

```
zeeshan Cleartext-Password := "zeeshan"
    Service-Type = Framed,
    Framed-Protocol = PPP,
    iexgroup = CGX-AdminRO
```

### **CGX-Access Configuration**

- Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General  $\rightarrow$  Servers  $\rightarrow$  Radius Server
- Configure your Radius Server details (PAP or MSCHAPv2)

Active Directory Servers	RADIUS Server	DHCP Servers	Mail Server	Web Proxy Server	SMS Gateway
RADIUS Server					
Host or IP	radius.s1.com				
Secret	•••••	•••••			
Authentication type	MSCHAPv2	¥			
	Use for BYOD Au	thentication			
	Use for CGX Acce	ess-ADMIN Authent	tication		

For assigning group level permissions, you can either use predefined groups or create your own group with custom permissions.

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Permission Manager

Permission Manager	
Role CGX-AdminRO  CGX-Admin Perm CGX-AdminRO GRM-Sponsor Acco CGX-CVMAdmin	Help
Can Create Account, Set Permission	No access  Readonly  R/W
Can force other users out on conflict	O Yes   No
System/Operations	
Configuration	No access Readonly OR/W
Policies	No access  Readonly  R/W
Guests/BYOD devices	
Access to Device Registration Templates	○ No access

Note: The same group should be assigned and returned with radius VSA 2939 discussed above

- Save changes and log out
- Login in with user defined on Radius server
- Verify the permissions granted to the user

) → C û	_	+	13/index.php?r=site/index			☺ ☆		00	2
CV Assess	Configuration •	Policies * NAC *			Enforcement is disable		Welcome zeeshan	Sign Out	
	Gen	eral Settings							
		Edit Setting				×	_		
		Names Used by Poli	cies Note: All strings are case sensitive				_		
	Serve A O R Name	Access Control Lists names	byod-access consultant excluded full-access guest-access limited Restrict-Azure	Active Directory or LDAP User Groups	AD-student AD-itstaff				
	D A Conta N Devic N	Device Flags	Restrict-FaceB Restrict-limit restricted						
	Log F Des [5 OS De V Capt	User Defined Flags	consultant flag1 flag2 flag3 flag4 skynet-device	Reserved Flags	AD-managed app-control-off APT-Event AV-Config AV-managed AV-off AV-offine	^			
	Site I C W W A S				AV-out-of-date	v			
	Appli Ei Gues					Cancel	_		

In the above example, user "zeeshan" is a read-only user and cannot make any changes to the above settings.

# **Customizing Landing Pages**

CGX Access provides customization in two ways. Text fields can be edited through the main configuration interface (see Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings). The styles of the landing pages by modifying the CSS (cascading style sheet). Steps to create such a CSS can be found below.

CSS files govern the look and feel of the landing pages only. The GRM theme (landing page theme) is generated from LESS source files (see: http://lesscss.org for additional info on LESS).

#### **Obtain a LESS editing program**

LESS files are text-based files and any text editor can be used. "Crunch" (<u>www.cruchapp.net</u>) is recommended, as it includes a CSS compiler for LESS files. Other options, such as "Sublime" (<u>www.sublimetext.com</u>) + less2css plugin and an accompanying compiler can be used as well.

#### **Download LESS files**

A basic set of LESS files can be obtained from Infoexpress support. It will contain a base set of LESS files which can be compiled into a main.css and accompanying image files (see below)

#### Edit .less files as desired

After downloading and decompressing the less files, open them in the editor and make changes as desired. Below are some locations of parameters that can be changed

File	Description
main.less	Main file that links to sub-files with additional settings
variables.less	This file contains many of the default colors and images used
header.less	Contains settings for the top part of the pages
footer.less	Settings for the bottom of pages
button.less	Settings for buttons
mobile.less	Settings for pages in a small browser

Settings for individual pages can be found in the /page directory.

### "Crunch" (compile) main.css files

When satisfied with the changes made, the *main.less* file should be compiled (it will invoke all the other files specified). The output file should be called *main.css* 

Note: The compiler may place the main.css file in the same directory as the .less files.

### Upload CSS and images to CGX Access

When done, the main.css file, as well as the images directory should be uploaded to the CGX Access through FTP using the cguser account. Below is the directory structure that should be present on the CGX Access

Path			Contents
/updates	/grm-theme	/css	contains the main.css file
		/images	contains the images referenced by the css file

Only the *main.css* file and images are needed on the CGX Access, The .less files do not need to be uploaded

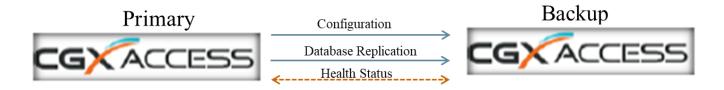
After uploading the files, the CGX Access will automatically pull these files and update the landing pages. No further commands are needed to update the pages. Please allow a few seconds for this action to complete.

# High Availability

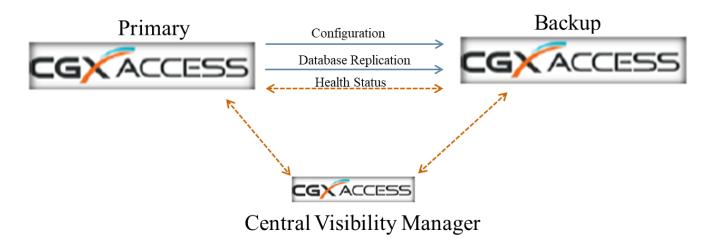
# Overview

The High Availability option provides redundancy in the event an appliance or virtual appliance was to fail or be offline. HA is provided using a two-box design, where the Primary appliance syncs its database and configuration with a passive Backup appliance. If the Backup appliance determines the Primary appliance is offline, it will become active.

When the Primary appliance comes back online, the Backup will sync the configuration and database back to the Primary, and the Primary will become active again.



In environments that have Centrally Managed Appliances, the Central Visibility Manager can be configured to be an arbiter to participate in the decision of which appliance should be active.



# Requirements

- An HA license is required
- The Backup appliance must use the same physical appliance type or same hypervisor. Mixing and matching of physical \ virtual appliances is not supported.
- The appliances trunk port configurations should be similar, but with unique IP addresses
- The Primary and Backup appliances should be deployed on the same VLAN
- Appliances must be able to ping its default gateway
- Appliances should not be configured for Inline Enforcement (a different HA design is recommended for Inline appliances)

• If configured with the CVM as the arbiter, each appliance pair will use a unique arbiter port

# **Configuration – Standalone Appliances**

These configuration steps for setting-up HA with two appliances are simple, but must be done in the correct order.

- 1. Disable Enforcement (Use monitor mode on each VLAN)
- 2. Configure the Primary unit
- 3. Configure the Backup unit
- 4. Re-enable enforcement (as desired)

**Tip:** Before configuring HA, have a recent backup of the Primary Appliance.

### **Configure the Primary unit**

The Primary unit is the main appliance where configurations are made.

**Note:** If the Primary unit is already in production, then Enforcement should be placed in Monitor mode until the HA setup is complete.

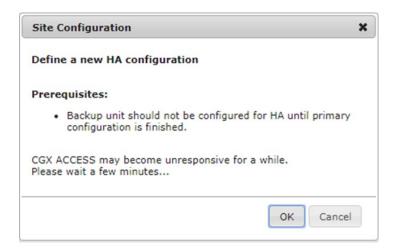
- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Site Settings and change "CGX Access Server Mode" from Standalone Appliance to Standalone Appliance - HA mode
   Site Settings

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance 🔹
	Standalone Appliance
	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Configure Services:	Centrally Managed Appliance
-	Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Service	Central Visibility Manager

- Set the account for Inter-CGX Access communication. The same username and password credentials will also need to be set on the Backup appliance.
- Check box to make Primary CGX Access Server
- Configure the IP address of the Backup appliance (Peer CGX Access Address)

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance - HA mode 🔹
Inter-CGX Access Communication	
Username	admin
Password	•••••
HA Configuration	
Primary CGX Access Server	
Replacement for existing primary	
Peer CGX Access Address	192.168.253.245
External Arbiter	None Other designated
Manual failover	None 🔻
	Submit

• Click **Submit**. You will be warned that the Backup should **not** already be configured. It's OK for the backup unit to be on the network, but it should not yet be configured for HA.



- You will be logged out of CGX-Access and the changes will take effect. Please wait 2-5 minutes before logging back in.
- Within 2-5 minutes the Primary appliance will be in HA mode.

CGX Acces Standalone - HA	Configu	uration • Policies • Control •	Visibility -
Cover Device	Site: Primary: Backup:	Singapore 192.168.253.220 (active) 192.168.253.245 (unreachable)	53 ¢)
D (1) (1)	Arbiter:	192.168.253.220 (self)	

Note: The Backup will not be reachable until it has also been configured for HA

### Configure the Backup unit

The Backup unit will pull its configuration from the Primary unit, so only IP Addresses and network configurations need to be pre-configured. Except for the appliance's IP addresses, other network settings should be identical.

**Note:** Before configuring the Backup unit, the Primary unit must first be configured for HA, as instructed above.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Site Settings and change "CGX Access Server Mode" from Standalone Appliance to Standalone Appliance HA mode

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance
	Standalone Appliance
	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Configure Services:	Centrally Managed Appliance
	Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Service	Central Visibility Manager

- Set the account for Inter-CGX Access communication. The username and password credentials must match what was previously configured on the Primary unit.
- In the "Peer CGX Access Address" configure the IP address of the Primary appliance Site Settings

CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance - HA mode	•
Inter-CGX Access Communication		
Username	admin	
Password	•••••	
HA Configuration		
Primary CGX Access Server		
Peer CGX Access Address	192.168.253.220	
	Submit	

• Click **Submit**. You will be warned that the Primary unit should be in HA mode and in working state.

Site Configuration
Join an existing HA configuration
Prerequisites:
<ul> <li>Primary must be accessible and HA set can't be in ERROR state.</li> </ul>
CGX ACCESS may become unresponsive for a while. Please wait a few minutes
OK Cancel

- You will be logged out of CGX-Access and the changes will take effect. The configuration and database will be sync'd from the Primary. This will take some time, so please wait 5-10 minutes before logging back in.
- Within 5-10 minutes the appliance will be in HA mode and show the Primary as Active.

CGX Access Standalone - HA	Configu	ration 🔻	
Cover Device	Site: Primary: Backup:	Singapore 192.168.253.220 (active, reachable) 192.168.253.245	
Restricted	Arbiter: reachable)	192.168.253.220 (active peer,	

Note: When in Backup mode, only the Configuration menu will be available.

# **Configuration – Centrally Managed Appliances**

These configuration steps for setting-up HA with Centrally Managed appliances are simple, but must be done in the correct order.

- 1. Configure the CVM to be an Arbiter (optional)
- 2. Disable Enforcement (Use monitor mode on each VLAN)
- 3. Configure the Primary unit
- 4. Configure the Backup unit
- 5. Re-enable enforcement (as desired)

**Tip:** Before configuring HA, have a recent backup of the Primary Appliance.

### **Configure the CVM to be an Arbiter (optional)**

In environments that have Centrally Managed Appliances, the Central Visibility Manager can be configured to be an arbiter to participate in the decision of which appliance should be active.

- **Note:** In environments with reliable network connectivity to the CVM, having the CVM provide this independent arbiter functionality is recommended. However, if connectivity is inconsistent this could prevent the fail-over to the backup unit from occurring. Therefore, in environments with inconsistent connectivity, it's best not to use the CVM as an arbiter.
  - In CVM go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
  - Scroll down to Site Settings and click "Configure"

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Central Visibility Manager
Site Name	Central Visibility Manager
Inter-CGX Access Communication	
Username	admin
Password	
HA Configuration	
Arbiter Instances	Configure
	Submit

• Select "New Arbiter Instance(s)"

HA Configuration				
Arbiter Instances	New Arbiter In	nstance(s)		
	Port	Bound to	Status	Action
	Submit			

• Configure a unique port for each appliance pair. If there will be 5 HA sets of appliances, then configure 5 unique ports, starting from port 27018.

New Arbiter Instance(s)				
Port	Bound to	Status	Action	
27018		Listen	Ū	
27019		Listen	Ū	
27020		Listen	Ť	
27021		Listen	<u> </u>	
27022		Listen	<u> </u>	
Submit				

• Submit changes to save

HA Configuration	
Arbiter Instances	27018,27019,27020,27021,27022
	Submit

### **Configure the Primary unit**

The Primary unit is the main appliance where configurations are made.

**Note:** If the Primary unit is already in production, then enforcement should be placed in Monitor mode until HA setup is complete.

- In CGX Access GUI, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Site Settings and change "CGX Access Server Mode" to Centrally Managed Appliance HA mode

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Centrally Managed Appliance 🔻
Site Name	Standalone Appliance
Central Visibility Manager Address	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Inter-CGX Access Communication	Centrally Managed Appliance Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Username	Central Visibility Manager
Password	
	Submit

• Set the account details for Inter-CGX Access communication. This doesn't need to change if the appliance was already being centrally managed. These setting should match the CVM.

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Site Name	Singapore
Central Visibility Manager Address	192.168.253.250
Inter-CGX Access Communication	
Username	admin
Password	•••••
HA Configuration	
Primary CGX Access Server	
Replacement for existing primary	
Peer CGX Access Address	192.168.253.245
External Arbiter	○ None ● CVM ○ Other designated
Arbiter Port	27018
	Submit

- Check box to make Primary CGX Access Server
- Configure the IP address of the Backup appliance (Peer CGX Access Address)
- If using CVM as an Arbiter than specify a unique port that has been configured on the CVM. (optional)
- Click **Submit**. You will be warned that the Backup should not be configured. It's OK for the backup unit to be on the network, but it should not yet be configured for HA.

Site Configuration			
Define a new HA configuration			
Prerequisites:			
<ul> <li>Backup unit should not be configured for HA until primary configuration is finished.</li> <li>The arbiter instance on CVM(192.168.253.250:27018) must be running for this HA.</li> </ul>			
CGX ACCESS may become unresponsive for a while. Please wait a few minutes			
OK Cancel			

- You will be logged out of CGX-Access and the changes will take effect. Please wait 2-3 minutes before logging back in.
- Within 2-3 minutes the Primary appliance will be in HA mode.

CGX Acces Centrally Managed - H	Comula	iration -	Policies -	Control -	Visibility •
Cover Device	Site: Primary: Backup:	Singapore 192.168.253.220 (active) 192.168.253.245 (unreachable)		53 ¢)	
Restricted	Arbiter: reachable)	192.168	.253.250:27018	B (CVM,	s by Access G

• Confirm the Arbiter is reachable.

Note: The Backup will not be reachable until it has also been configured for HA.

#### Configure the Backup unit

The Backup unit will pull its configuration from the Primary unit, so only IP Addresses and network configurations need to be pre-configured. Except for the appliance's IP addresses, other network settings should be identical.

**Note:** Before configuring the Backup unit, the Primary unit must first be configured for HA, as instructed above.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Site Settings and change "CGX Access Server Mode" to Centrally Managed Appliance HA mode

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Centrally Managed Appliance 🔻
Site Name	Standalone Appliance
Central Visibility Manager Address	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Inter-CGX Access Communication	Centrally Managed Appliance Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Username	Central Visibility Manager
Password	
	Submit

- Set the account details for Inter-CGX Access communication. This doesn't need to change if the appliance was already being centrally managed. These setting should match the CVM.
- In the "Peer CGX Access Address" configure the IP address of the Primary appliance

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Inter-CGX Access Communication	
Username	admin
Password	•••••
HA Configuration	
Primary CGX Access Server	
Peer CGX Access Address	192.168.253.220
	Submit

• Click **Submit**. You will be warned that the Primary unit should be in HA mode and in working state.



- You will be logged out of CGX-Access and the changes will take effect. The configuration and database will be sync'd from the Primary, so please wait 5-10 minutes before logging back in.
- Within 5-10 minutes the appliance will be in HA mode and show the Primary as Active.

CGX Access Centrally Managed - HA	- Comilau	ration 👻	
Cover Device	Site: Primary: Backup:	Singapore 192.168.253.220 (active, reachable) 192.168.253.245	
Restricted	Arbiter: reachable)	192.168.253.250:27018 (CVM,	S

Note: When in Backup mode, only the Configuration menu will be available.

• Login into the Central Visibility Manager, on Dashboard scroll down to verify HA status is shown correctly.

#### CGX Access Servers

Site	Management IP	Mode	Last Reported
Central Visibility Manager	192.168.253.250	CVM	🔵 n/a
Singapore	192.168.253.220	HA Primary - Active	1 minute ago
Singapore	192.168.253.245	HA Backup	4 seconds ago

# **Making HA Configuration Changes**

If it's necessary to make changes to a working HA setup, please be sure to follow the steps outlined below:

#### **Replace a Primary**

- 1. Make sure the original Primary is offline or off HA (i.e., standalone)
- 2. If new Primary has a different IP than the original one, change peer on Backup to the new IP
- 3. Configure the new Primary (check "Replacement for existing Primary")
- 4. No need to change arbiter configuration

#### **Replace a Backup**

- 1. Make sure the original Backup is offline or off HA (i.e., standalone)
- 2. If new Backup has a different IP than the original one, change peer on Primary to the new IP
- 3. Configure the new Backup
- 4. No need to change arbiter configuration

#### **Restore from a Backup Image**

- 1. Disable Enforcement
- 2. Change Backup to Standalone mode
- 3. Restore Primary
- 4. Rejoin Backup to HA
- 5. Re-enabled Enforcement

#### Upgrade to a New Version

- 1. Disable Enforcement
- 2. Change Backup to Standalone mode
- 3. Update Primary, Backup
- 4. Rejoin Backup to HA
- 5. Re-enabled Enforcement

#### **Other Reconfiguration Changes**

- 1. Convert both members of the HA to standalone
- 2. Remove the arbiter port if using CVM arbiter

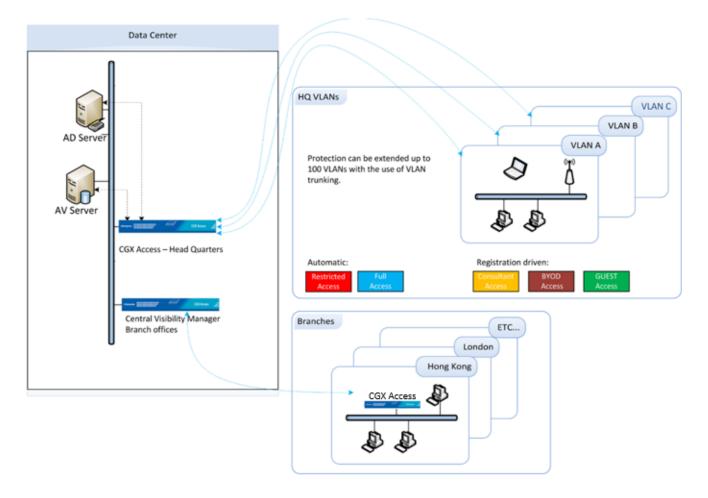
HA Configuration					
Arbiter Instances	New Arbiter Instance(s)				
	Port Bound to Status Ad		Action	n	
	27018		Listen	Ē	
	Submit				

3. Create HA from scratch

# **Central Visibility Manager**

# **CVM Overview**

It's common to deploy multiple CGX Access appliances in multiple offices. In these scenarios where more than one CGX Access appliance is deployed it is beneficial to use the Central Visibility Manager (CVM) for an organization-wide visibility and management of these appliances.



The Central Visibility Manager doesn't perform monitoring and enforcement actions itself. It's used for consolidated reporting and management of multiple appliances.

# **Required Ports**

For normal operation the following ports should be allowed between the centrally managed appliances and CVM:

TCP 443 - Administrative GUI and Synchronization

TCP 10101 – for Synchronization

It may also be necessary to allow TCP 21 from a management subnet to the centrally managed appliances, so agent policies and software updates can be uploaded to the distributed appliances. See table below:

	Traffic	Central Visibility	Centrally Managed	Centrally Managed
	Direction	Manager (CVM)	Appliance (Primary)	Appliance (Backup)
Central Visibility				
Manager (CVM)				
Centrally Managed	$\uparrow$	TCP 10101		TCP 10120
Appliance (Primary)	-	TCP 443		
		TCP xxxx (arbiter)*		
Centrally Managed	$\rightarrow$	TCP 10101	TCP 10120	
Appliance (Backup)	-	TCP 443		
		TCP xxxx (arbiter)*		
Jump Server \ Policy		TCP 443	TCP 443	TCP 443
Manager PC	$\rightarrow$	TCP 21	TCP 21	TCP 21

\*If CVM is configured as the arbiter in HA setups.

# **Configuring a Central Visibility Manager**

The Central Visibility Manager uses the same appliance image as the normal CGX Access appliance, so the initial setup will be like setting up a CGX Access appliance.

Note: The CVM is licensed separately and has a unique CVM license required to operate.

#### **Basic IP configuration**

- For physical appliances, use a direct connect ethernet cable for SSH access to the default IP Address 10.0.0.250/24. Alternatively, plug-in a keyboard and HDMI monitor.
- For virtual appliances open a console window and power on the VM.

Once the boot cycle is complete you will be prompted for a login.

- Login as admin/admin.
- From the main menu choose 1 (Run setup wizard) and follow the prompts to set the Managed IP address and netmask, the default gateway, DNS servers, system name, time zone and date/time.

**Note:** Keep the admin password in a safe place. If it is lost, without having access to an alternate admin level account, there will be no way to recover the password.

#### Default user accounts are:

- admin used for initial setup and configuration as well as SSH access for maintenance tasks
- cguser used for uploading files through ftp

The default passwords are the same as the username

When the setup wizard completes, the system should be accessible on the network.

- Confirm that you can ping the management IP from another system on the same subnet and also from a system on another subnet. If the pings fail double check the physical or virtual connections and the basic IP configuration
- Connect to the CGX Access web GUI by opening https://<Managed ip> (that was configured previously)

InfoExpress - CGX Access / ×	
← → C ▲ Not secure   bttps://192.168.253.220/index.php?r=site/login	ବ ★ :
infoexpress CGX Access Standalone	
Enter username and password to continue.	
Login	

Login as user admin (default password admin). A modern browser such as Chrome is strongly recommended. Older versions of IE or Firefox may not display the pages correctly.

Using the web GUI additional setting can be configure:

- (Optional) Active Directory server settings (used for Permission Management)
- (Optional) E-mail & SMS server settings (used for alerting)
- (Required) Add license for Central Visibility Manager
- 1. In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  License Manager
- 2. Click on "New License"
- 3. Paste the key into the space provided and apply

### License Manager

License Type	Distributed deployment
Maximum Appliance Number	3
Device License	500
Licenses allocated	210
Licenses used	6
Licensed to	For Evaluation Purpose Only

The License Manager will show the maximum number of GX Access appliances that CVM can manage. If using a Distributed license, you will also see the number of devices that can be managed, and the current allocation of the license. With the distributed license, customers can allocate the license across different appliances, as shown below.

#### License Utilization

Site	IP Address	Licenses Allocated	Licenses Used	
Manila	192.168.253.220	200	3	
Singapore	192.168.253.230	10	3	2

Once the initial configuration is done the new server can be switched to a Central Visibility Server.

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Site Settings and change "CGX Access Server Mode" from Standalone Appliance to Central Visibility Manager

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance 🔹
	Standalone Appliance
	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Configure Services:	Centrally Managed Appliance
-	Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Service	Central Visibility Manager

- Set both the Site name and an account for Inter-CGX Access communication.
  - If left blank the site name will be the default of Central Visibility Manager
  - Site Name should only consist of the characters A-Z, a-z, 0-9, and \_
  - The username and password credentials are only used to secure Inter-CGX traffic. They do not need to correspond to any actual account.

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Central Visibility Manager
Site name	Central Visibility Manager
Inter-CGX Access communication	
Username	admin
Password	
	Submit

• Click Submit. You will be logged out of CGX-Access and the changes will take effect.

InfoExpress - CGX Access A X	
← → C ▲ Not secure   bttps://192.168.253.250/index.php?r=site/login	९ ☆ :
Enter userame and password to continue.	

# **Configuring an Appliance to be Centrally Managed**

Once a Central Visibility Manager has been configured, new or existing standalone CGX Access appliances can be configured to be manageable from CVM.

If the CGX-Access appliance will be a new deployment and not a conversion of an existing Standalone appliance, first perform an Initial Configuration as covered on Page 14. At a minimum, the appliance should have:

- Have a primary IP address assigned
- Have a Host name
- Have a DNS server

Once the server has a basic configuration it can be switched to a Centrally Managed Appliance:

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Site Settings and change "CGX Access Server Mode" from Standalone Appliance to Centrally Managed Appliance

#### Site Settings

CGX Access Server Mode	Standalone Appliance 🔹
	Standalone Appliance
	Standalone Appliance - HA mode
Configure Services:	Centrally Managed Appliance
-	Centrally Managed Appliance - HA mode
Service	Central Visibility Manager

- Set the Site name, Central Visibility Manager IP Address, and the account for Inter-CGX Access communication.
  - Site Name should only consist of the characters A-Z, a-z, 0-9, and \_
  - The username and password credentials must be the same as those set on the Central Visibility Management Server.

Site Settings	
CGX Access Server Mode	Centrally Managed Appliance 🔹
Site Name	Singapore
Central Visibility Manager Address	192.168.253.250
Inter-CGX Access Communication	
Username	admin
Password	•••••
	Submit

- Click **Submit**. You will be logged out of CGX-Access and the changes will take effect.
- Within two minutes device data should be replicated to the Central Visibility Manager.

# **Deployment Manager**

The Central Visibility Manager includes a Deployment Manager that is used to accelerate deployments or configuration changes among different CGX Access appliances.

- In CVM GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Deployment Manager
- Create a Deployment Set

## **Deployment Manager**

Use this to selectively synchronize configuration including settings and policies among remote CGX ACCESS
Penloyment Set

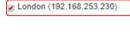
Deployment Set	Contents
New	Name Singapore Settings
	Source Singapore (192.168.253.21 V
	Include Select all Clear all
	General Settings     Device Registration Methods       Integrations     Device & Roles Classification       Roles & Access     Time/Location/List       Device Events     Monitoring       Device Profiler     ACL

- 1. Specify a name
- 2. Select the Source appliance to copy the settings from
- 3. Choose which settings to include in the Deployment set
- 4. Click Save
- Push a Deployment Set
- 1. Select a Deployment Set
- 2. Select the location(s) to push to
- 3. Click Push

## **Deployment Manager**

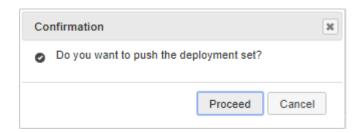
Use this to selectively synchronize configuration including settings and policies among remote CGX ACCESS

Deployment Set	Contents		
New	Name	Singapore Settings	Rename Delete
Singapore Settings	Source	192.168.253.220	
	Include		
	⊘ General S ⊘ Integratio ⊘ Roles & A ⊘ Device Ev ⊘ Device Pr	ns Access Vents	Device Registration Methods     Device & Roles Classification     Time/Location/List     Monitoring     ACL
Push selected to Select all Clear all Singapore (192.168.253.220)			



Push Cancel Help

4. Confirm the Push



#### **Software Updates**

Deployment Manager can also be used to update software across multiple appliances at the same time.

- In CGX Access, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Server Maintenance  $\rightarrow$  Software Update
- Browse to location of file and upload the image

CGX Access Central Visibility	Configuration -	Visibility -
CGX Access Management     CGX Access Logs	Software Upda	te:
Agent Logging Server     About     Support Tools	Date and Time	
		upload: Choose File No file chosen Upload Image
	ACCESS-2.4.2	200526.BIN ▼ checksum: file size: Submit

- Once uploaded, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Deployment Manager  $\rightarrow$  Software Update tab
- Choose the correct image, complete checksum: and file size:
- Select the appliances to be upgraded and click Upgrade

Deployment Manager
Settings Software Update
Select a build image:         ACCESS-2.4.200526.BIN         Push the selected to Select all Clear all
Singapore (192.168.253.220) Current Version: CGX-ACCESS: 2.4.200526 Kuala_Lumpur (192.168.253.240) Current Version: CGX-ACCESS: 2.4.200402
LATEST UPDATE:
Status: Finished
Start at: 2020-05-27 06:53:30 File: ACCESS-2.4.200526.BIN
Checksum: 1297061354
File size: 244929624
Upgrade Reset Help

The images will be downloaded to the appliances and if the Checksum and file size are accurate, each appliance will be upgraded. Allow 15-30 minutes for upgrades to occur. The appliances will be rebooted after the upgrade is complete.

**Note:** The CVM should use the same software version as the remotes. As a best practice, it's recommended to first upgrade the centrally managed appliances, before upgrading the CVM itself.

## **Central Visibility Manager – Device Roaming**

The Central Visibility Manager maintains a list of all devices that are connected to the extended enterprise. This list can be used to facilitate device roaming between locations. There is no setup required on the CVM itself. Each CGX Access Remote can be configured to control which type of devices and from what locations are allowed to connect.

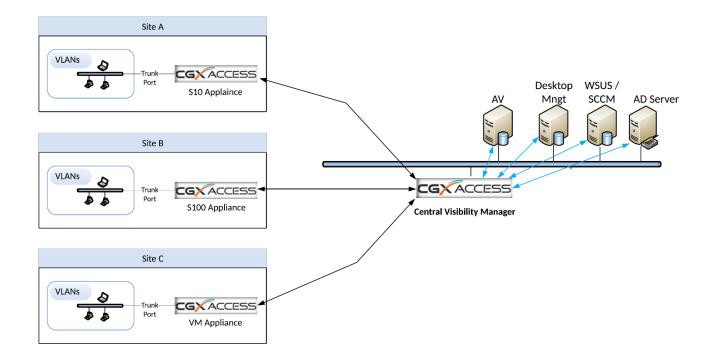
- In CGX Access, go to Configuration → Integration → Central Visibility Manager Roaming Integration
- Select Sites devices can roam from these sites
- Select types of devices that can from the selected sites

Edit Action	×		
Central Visibility Manager - Roaming Integration			
<ul> <li>Enable roaming from the following</li> <li>All sites</li> <li>Singapore</li> <li>Kuala_Lumpur</li> <li>Query interval</li> <li>300</li> </ul>	locations:		
(seconds)			
Policies			
Flag roaming devices as	roaming •		
✓ Allow BYOD registered devices	byod		
Allow Guest registered devices	guest		
Allow devices flagged as	AD-managed ×		
	Select 🔻		
	Save Cancel Help		

In the above example, only "BYOD" registered devices and devices flagged as "AD-Managed" will be allowed to roam from either of the sites. These roaming devices will be flagged "Roaming", so using this "Roaming" flag, the devices can be assigned limited access to the network, as desired.

# **Central Visibility Manager – Integration Proxy**

When integrating with 3<sup>rd</sup> party security solutions, it can be useful to use the CVM to act as an integration Proxy. Using this proxy feature, the Central Visibility Manager will integrate directly to the 3<sup>rd</sup>-party servers. The CVM would then share this integration data with the Centrally Managed Appliances. This architecture would aid deployments and minimize the load on the 3<sup>rd</sup> party servers.



Central Visibility Manager Configuration

- In CVM, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration Proxy
- Configure the desired integration (See Integration section for specific vendor info)

Edit Action			×
McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator Int	tegration		
Server Configuration			
Host or IP		Username	
Port	1433	Password	••••
Database			Test Connection
Query Interval (Seconds)	150		

Centrally Managed Appliance Configuration

- In the managed appliances, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Integration
- Select the desired integration
- Select the "via Central Visibility Manager"

Edit Action		×
McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator Integration		
Server Configuration		
Query the Server Via Central Visibility Manager ( 🔻		
Query Interval (Seconds)		
Policy		
CONDITION	FLAG	
CONDITION 🗹 Ising devices running ePO Agent	FLAG AV-managed	•
	AV-managed	
<ul> <li>✓ Flag devices running ePO Agent</li> <li>✓ Flag devices with inactive on-access scanner</li> </ul>	AV-managed AV-off	

Note: Each Centrally Managed Appliance would still be able to set their own policies.

# Maintenance and Support

# Upgrading firmware

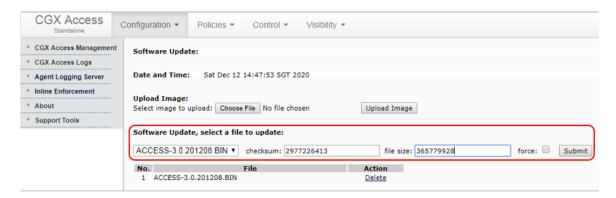
Firmware updates may be provided by InfoExpress to upgrade the CGX Access with new functionalities or fix existing issues. A binary update file (BIN file) will be provided with a checksum and file size. An example of the BIN file may be CGX-Access-3.0.201208.BIN, with a checksum of 2977226413 and file size of 365779928.

Upgrading the firmware of the CGX Access can be done via the web interface

- In CGX Access GUI, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Server Maintenance  $\rightarrow$  Software Update
- Browse to location of file and upload the image

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration • Policies • Control • Visibility •
CGX Access Managemen	Software Update:
CGX Access Logs	
Agent Logging Server	Date and Time: Sat Dec 12 14:43:21 SGT 2020
Inline Enforcement     About	Upload Image: Select image to upload: Choose File No file chosen Upload Image
Support Tools	Software Update, select a file to update: <ul> <li>checksum:</li> <li>file size:</li> <li>force:</li> <li>Submit</li> </ul> No.         File           Action

• Once uploaded, complete checksum: and file size: then Submit



The CGX Access may reboot. Allow 5-15 minutes for upgrade to occur.

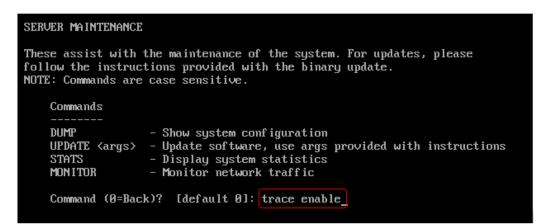
# **Collecting Logs (Dump2)**

For troubleshooting purposes, InfoExpress support may ask administrators to collect Dump2 Logs.

**Note:** Before collecting dump2 logs, please check with Support if you need to enable debug logging and the duration of logging required.

#### **Enable Debug Logging**

- In CGX Access SSH Console, use Option 91 Server Maintenance
- Type "trace enable"



• Confirm TRACE ENABLED is shown at the top of the SSH Console

CGX Access Server **********************************	*
<pre>=== General Setup === 1 Run Setup Wizard 10 Configure Networking 11 Set Date and Time 12 Manage Passwords 13 Configure Logging 14 Configure Services</pre>	<pre>=== Information ===     Version: CGX-ACCESS: 2.4.200618     Hardware: 1000-SWA 3.10.0 Managed IP: 192.168.253.220/255.255.255.0 Def gateway: 192.168.253.254     Syslog Svr: None/None DNS Servers: 192.168.253.100</pre>
Enter Option (0=Exit): _	=== Maintenance === 91 Server Maintenance 99 Restart/Shutdown Server

• Wait for few minutes, as advised by Support, before collecting the logs.

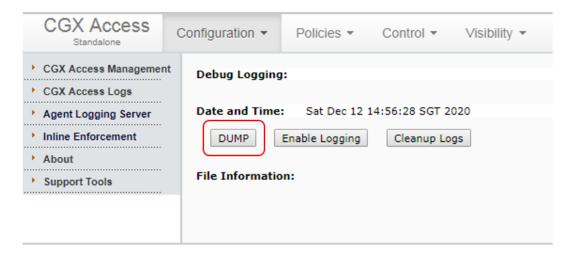
Note: Collecting the logs will disable Trace Enable

#### **Collecting Logs (Web GUI method)**

- In CGX Access GUI, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Scroll down to Server Maintenance  $\rightarrow$  Dump Logs

Server Maintenance:	
SSL Certificate Management	
Manage Accounts	
Radius Authentication	
Software Update DUMP Logs	

• Click the DUMP button and confirm dump



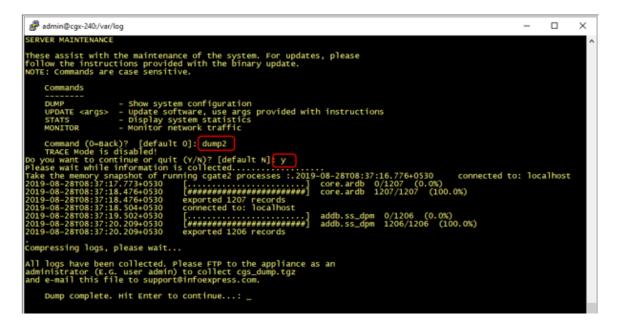
- Wait for Dump process to complete It may take 5 to 15 minutes depending on number of endpoints. Longer if the system has had core dumps.
- Once complete, download the file and send to support.

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration -	Policies -	Control -	Visibility 👻
CGX Access Management     CGX Access Logs	Debug Logging	):		
Agent Logging Server	Date and Time	: Sat Dec 12 1	5:02:07 SGT 20	20
Inline Enforcement	DUMP	Enable Logging	Cleanup Log	S
About				
Support Tools	File Informatio	on:		
	Created at: D	ecember 12 2020	15:02:02.	

Note: If the web interface is not available, the SSH CLI method can be used to collect the logs.

#### **Collecting Logs (SSH CLI method)**

- In CGX Access SSH Console, use Option 91 Server Maintenance
- Type "dump2"
- Type "y" to confirm
- Wait for dump process to complete It may take 5 to 15 minutes depending on number of endpoints. Longer if the system has had core dumps.



• FTP to CGX Access appliance with Admin account to download the logs and send to support.



# Appendix A – Certificate Management

By default, CGX Access uses self-signed certificates which will not be trusted. To eliminate warnings on untrusted certificates, third-party certificates can be uploaded to the appliance.

# **Option 1 - Generate Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to obtain a certificate from your CA**

**Please note:** CGX Access could be using 3 hostnames, one for management-IP, Captive portal, and Remediation portal. Therefore, it is advised that you create a wildcard certificate. (\*.domain.com)

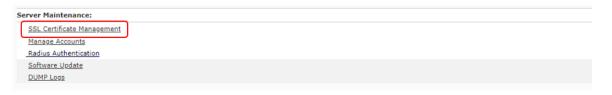
- Login to CGX Access using username **admin**, Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings.
- Configure DNS server, Hostname, Domain Name, Hostname for Captive portal & Remediation Portal, and IP Address for Captive portal & Remediation portal

CGX Access	Configuration - Polic	es • NAC • Visibility •		Enforcement is disabled on 1 of 3 s	Welcome adm	in Sign Out
CGX Access Management	system Configuration	19				
CGX Access Logs	System comiguration.					
<ul> <li>Support Tools</li> </ul>	Date and Time: Mon Nov 12 9:26:3	3 IST 2018 Change				
	Configure Networking					
		IP / Netmask	Gateway	VLAN ID Configuration	State	
	Adapter #1 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8b	10.20.0.13/255.255.255.0	10.20.0.2	(Management IP)	Ŷ	Add VLAN
	Adapter #2 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8c	172.16.11.1/255.255.0.0	172.16.10.2	Using DHCP for IP address	/gateway 🔻 👌	Add VLAN
	Adapter #3 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8d	192.168.10.10/255.255.255.0	192.168.10.2	Using DHCP for IP address	/gateway ▼ ☆	Add VLAN
	Adapter #4 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8e	/		Off	¥	Add VLAN
	DNS Servers	10.20.0.3				
	Hostname	mini				
	Domain Name	s1.com				
	Landing Pages					
	Host Name for Landing P	ages cgxa-landing				
	IP Address (A) (IP/Netm	ask) 10.20.0.14/255.255.255.0	Adapter #	±1 ▼		
		Submit				

• Click **Submit** to save the settings

**Note:** Hostnames should match as to be entered in the certificate. Some settings may not be configurable until DNS server and Domain name is configured.

• Scroll down and Click SSL Certificate Management



• Click on Generate Private Key and CSR

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration -	Policies • NAC • Visibility •
<ul> <li>CGX Access Managemen</li> <li>CGX Access Logs</li> <li>Agent Logging Server</li> <li>About</li> <li>Support Tools</li> </ul>	SSL Certificate	E Management: ficate And Private Key mentication Certificate vate Key And CSR If-Signed Certificate undle

• Enter required details and click on Generate

enerate Private Key and Certificate Singn	ing Request (CSR): 😰	
Country	IN	two-letter country code (e.g. US)
State or Province	Uttar Pradesh	non-abbreviated state or province name (e.g. California)
Locality	NOIDA	non-abbreviated city/locality name (e.g. Saint Louis)
Organization	INFOEXPRESS	organization/company name
Organizational unit	SUPPORT	[optional] organizational unit/department
Common name	cgxa.s1.com	fully qualified domain name of the server

Standalone	onfiguration - Policies - NAC - Visibility -			Welcome admin	Sign O
CGX Access Management CGX Access Logs Support Tools	<ul> <li>Save As</li> <li>← → × ↑ → This PC → Desktop → Certificate</li> <li>Organize ▼ New folder</li> <li>Google Drive</li> <li>▲ Google Drive</li> <li>▲ Name</li> <li>▲ Links</li> <li>▲ Music</li> <li>➡ OneDrive</li> <li>➡ Pictures</li> <li>➡ Saved Games</li> <li>▲ Searches</li> </ul>	Date modified Type No items match your sea	v ð Size rch.	Search Certificate	х Р С
	Videos This PC 30 Objects Desktop 1-PATCHES Certificate				
	File name: request.csr				~

- Save the generated CSR
- Provide the CSR to certification authority (CA) to generate the certificate

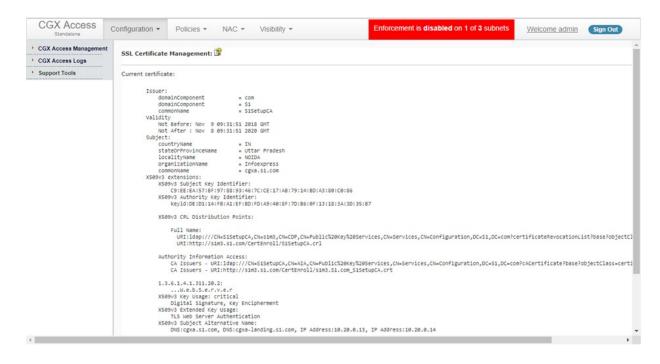
• Once you obtain the certificate from CA, Click on Upload signed certificate

SSL Certificate Management: 💕	
Private key and CSR were generated on June 07 2020 13:47:42	
Upload Signed Certificate	
Download CSR	
Upload Certificate And Private Key <sup>1</sup>	
Generate Private Key And CSR <sup>1</sup>	
Generate Self-Signed Certificate	
Upload CA bundle	
<sup>1</sup> Current private key and CSR will be overwritten	

• Choose certificate file to and upload

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration -	Policies • NAC • Visibility •
CGX Access Managemen     CGX Access Logs	t < Back to SSL 0	Certificate Management
Agent Logging Server     About	Upload Signed	Certificate: 😰
Support Tools		Certificate file Choose File No file chosen
		Upload

• New certificate will be uploaded and details will be shown



• Reboot CGX Access for new certificate to take effect

← → C ☆ ♠ https://cgxa.s1.com/index.php?r=site/index			☆ ◎   ● :
CGX Access Standalone Configuration - Policies - NAC -	Visibility 👻	🕞 🚹 Elements Cor	nsole Sources Network Security >> 1
Enforcement is disabled on 1 of 3 subnets	Icome admin Sign Out	Overview	Security overview
CGX Access / Overview		Main origin	
Android Unknown	Certificate	Path View Certificate	<ul> <li>This page is secure (valid HTTPS).</li> <li>Certificate - valid and trusted</li> <li>The connection to this site is using a valid, trusted serve certificate issued by S1SetupCA.</li> <li>View certificate</li> <li>Connection - secure (strong TLS 1.2)</li> <li>The connection to this site is encrypted and authenticated using TLS 1.2 (a strong protocol). ECDHE_RSA with P-256 (a strong key exchange), and AES_128_GCM (a strong cipher).</li> <li>Resources - all served securely.</li> </ul>
Guest Registered	This certificate is OK.		_
sername Full Name Phone Company			
Devices Registered			OK

• To Check certificate, browse CGX Access using hostname

**Note:** You can also browse the Captive Portal page (This example used Subject alternative name and hence the same certificate was valid for both hostnames.)

🗅 InfoExpress - CGX Access Admin 🗙 Guest Registration Ma	nagement × +		- 🗆 X
← → C ☆ 🏻 https://cgxa-landing.s1.com/ss/grm/	guest/termOfUse		☆ ○   ① :
MyCompany Network Access Control		Cre      Console     Overview	Sources Network Security >> : × Security overview
Welcome to Guest Registration! Terms Of Use Before proceeding to next page, please take a minute to rea Terms and Conditions of Use	Certificate General Details Certification Path Certification path S1SetupCA S1SetupCA S1SetupCA S1Com	Main origin X	This page is secure (valid HTTPS). Certificate - valid and trusted The connection to this site is using a valid, trusted server certificate issued by S1SetupCA.
You agree to use the network services in accordance with this you do not accept and agree to the TOU, you may reject the TO which case any further access is unauthorized. If you require details about the policy or have further question support group.		View Certificate	View certificate Connection - secure (strong TLS 1.2) The connection to this site is encrypted and authenticated using TLS 1.2 (a strong protocol), ECDHE_RSA with P-256 (a strong key exchange), and AES_128_GCM (a strong cipher). Resources - all served securely All resources on this page are served securely.
To signify your acceptance and complete the guest button.	Certificate status: This certificate is OK.	OK	

# **Option 2 - Upload certificate and private key to CGX Access.** (When

CSR is not generated)

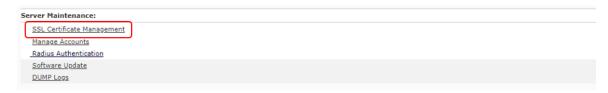
**Please note:** CGX Access could be using 3 hostnames, one for management-IP, Captive portal, and Remediation portal. Therefore, it is advised that you create a wildcard certificate. (\*.domain.com)

- Login to CGX Access using username **admin**, Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings.
- Configure DNS server, Hostname, Domain Name, Hostname for Captive portal & Remediation Portal and IP Address for Captive portal & Remediation portal
- Click **Submit** to save the settings

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration - Policies -	NAC - Visibility -		Enforcement i	is disabled on 1 of 3 subnets	Welcome admin	Sign Out
CGX Access Management	System Configuration: 😰						
CGX Access Logs							
upport Tools	Date and Time: Mon Nov 12 9:26:38 IST 201	8 <u>Change</u>					
	Configure Networking:						
		IP / Netmask	Gateway	VLAN ID	O Configuration	State	
	Adapter #1 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8b 10.20.0.	13/255.255.255.0	10.20.0.2		(Management IP)	Ŷ	Add VLAN
	Adapter #2 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8c 172.16.	1.1/255.255.0.0	172.16.10.2		Using DHCP for IP address/gateway	▼	Add VLAN
	Adapter #3 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8d 192.168	10.10/255.255.255.0	192.168.10.2		Using DHCP for IP address/gateway	▼ <u></u>	Add VLAN
	Adapter #4 MAC: 00:e0:67:06:df:8e /				Off	¥	Add VLAN
	DNS Servers	10.20.0.3					
	Hostname	mini					
	Domain Name	s1.com					
	Landing Pages						
	Host Name for Landing Pages	cgxa-landing					
	IP Address (A) (IP/Netmask)	10.20.0.14/255.255.255.0	Adapter #	1 🔻			
		Submit					

**Note:** Hostnames should match as to be entered in the certificate. Some settings may not be configurable until DNS server and Domain name is configured.

• Scroll down and Click SSL Certificate Management



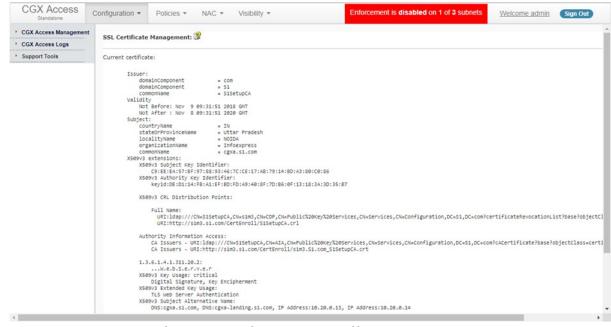
• Click on Upload Certificate and Private Key



- Choose files to upload. (Enter password if required)
- Click Upload

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration   Policies  NAC  Visibility  Enforcement is disabled on 1 of 3 set	ubnets Welcome admin	Sign Out
CGX Access Management     CGX Access Logs	< Back to SSI. Certificate Management		
Support Tools	Upload Certificate and Private Key: 🗊		
	Certificate Type Server key  Certificate file Choose File CGS.cer Private key file Choose File private.key Key password optional		
	Upload		

• New certificate will be uploaded and details will be shown



- Reboot CGX Access for new certificate to take effect
- To Check certificate, browse CGX Access using hostname

← → C ☆ ♠ https://cgxa.s1.com/index.php?r=site	(Index		☆ ◎   ●
CGX Access Standalone Configuration - Policies - N.	AC - Visibility -	🕞 Elements Console	Sources Network Security >>
Enforcement is disabled on 1 of 3 subnets	Welcome admin Sign Out	Overview	Security overview
CGX Access / Overview		Main origin	
ystem Overview version: CGX-ACCESS: 2.1.181101 mo	e General Details Certification	Path	This page is secure (valid HTTPS).      Certificate - valid and trusted
Devices By Operating Systems	Certification path		The connection to this site is using a valid, trusted serv
Windows H05	S1SetupCA mini.s1.com		certificate issued by S1SetupCA.
MacOS			Connection - secure (strong TLS 1.2) The connection to this site is encrypted and
Android Embedded Others			authenticated using TLS 1.2 (a strong protocol), ECDHE_RSA with P-256 (a strong key exchange), and AES_128_GCM (a strong cipher).
			Resources - all served securely
		View Certificate	All resources on this page are served securely.
	Certificate status:		
Guest Registered	This certificate is OK.		
sername Full Name Phone Compar	y s		
Devices Registered			_

**Note:** You can also browse the Captive Portal page (This example used Subject alternative name and hence the same certificate was valid for both hostnames.)

🗅 InfoExpress - CGX Access Admin 🗙 Guest Registration Ma	nagement × +		- 🗆 X
← → C ☆ 🔒 https://cgxa-landing.s1.com/ss/grm/	guest/termOfUse		☆ ♀   ❶ :
MyCompany Network Access Control		Cr D Elements Console     Overview     Main origin	Sources Network Security >> : X Security overview
Welcome to Guest Registration!	Certificate	X	This page is secure (valid HTTPS).
Terms Of Use Before proceeding to next page, please take a minute to react Terms and Conditions of Use You agree to use the network services in accordance with this you do not accept and agree to the TOU, you may reject the TO which case any further access is unauthorized. If you require details about the policy or have further question support group.	General Details Certification Path Certification path	View Certificate	<ul> <li>Certificate - valid and trusted         The connection to this site is using a valid, trusted server certificate issued by S1SetupCA.         View certificate     </li> <li>Connection - secure (strong TLS 1.2)         The connection to this site is encrypted and authenticated using TLS 1.2 (a strong protocol), ECDHE, RSA with P-256 (a strong key exchange), and AES_128_GCM (a strong cipher).     </li> <li>Resources - all served securely         All resources on this page are served securely.     </li> </ul>
To signify your acceptance and complete the guest button.	Certificate status: This certificate is OK.	OK	

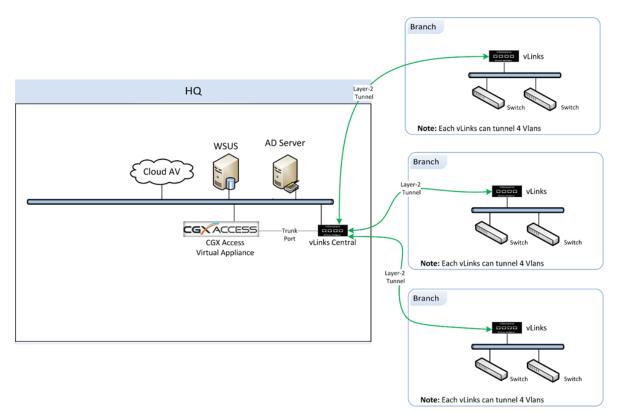
# Appendix B – vLinks Deployment

# vLinks Overview

The Easy NAC solution uses CGX Access appliances for visibility and protection of the network. To provide visibility and protection, the CGX Access appliance requires layer-2 visibility of the subnets it's protecting. Having layer-2 visibility at the main site can be easily achieved with trunk ports or standard access ports. However, getting layer-2 visibility for remote sites can be more challenging. The vLinks solution is designed to extend the reach of the CGX Access appliances so it can also protect your smaller remote sites with cost effective hardware.

The vLinks architecture is shown below. At remote sites, a vLinks appliance is placed on the network for layer-2 visibility. This layer-2 traffic is then tunneled back to a vLinks Central appliance. This tunneled traffic is sent over the existing corporate WAN, so an existing WAN network is required. MPLS and NAT'd network types are supported.

At the main site, a vLinks Central will consolidate the layer-2 traffic from multiple vLinks and share it with the CGX Access appliance using a port directly connected to the CGX Access appliance. With this connectivity in place, CGX Access will detect rogue devices at the branches and quarantine these devices real-time. All Easy NAC features including compliance checks, captive portals, Automated Threat Response, etc., are supported.



Adding vLinks to extended CGX Access protection to remote sites is a two-stage process. Stage one is to configure the vLinks Central appliance. Once the vLinks Central appliance is configured the vLinks Remote appliances can be configured to contact the CGX Access and download their configurations.

# vLinks Central Setup

The vLinks Central hardware is manufactured by Mikrotik. To configure this box, download the WinBox application at <u>https://mikrotik.com/download</u>. Connect the appliance (adapter 1) to your PC using an RJ45 cable and connect to it via it's MAC address or DHCP assigned IP address.

SinBox v3.18 (Addresses)	—		$\times$
File Tools			
Connect To: CC:2D:E0:B1:30:E6 Login: admin		Password In New V	
Password:			
Add/Set Connect To RoMON Connect			
Managed Neighbors			
T         Refresh         Fit	ind	all	₹
	Uptime		-
CC:2D:E0:B1:30:E6 0.0.0.0 MikroTik 6.46.3 (st RB750Gr3	00:0	01:31	
1 item (1 selected)			

The default account is admin. The default password is blank.

Perform the following steps to assign a static IP, default gateway, and admin password:

1) Configure a Static IP address - Go to: IP > Addresses >

Sadmin@CC:2D:E0:B1:30:E6 (MikroTik) - WinBox v6.46.3 on hEX (mmips)	_		×
Session Settings Dashboard			
Safe Mode Session: CC:2D:E0:B1:30:E6	Time:	00:14:56	
🔏 Quick Set			
CAPSMAN			
)em Interfaces			
🗘 Wireless ARP			
St Bridge Accounting Address List			
🚅 PPP Addresses 🖕 📼 🖉 🖉 Find			
Switch Cloud Address / Network Interface V			
ିଅଟି Mesh DHCP Client			
த IP 🖒 DHCP Relay			
⊘ MPLS ▷ DHCP Server New Address		×	
Address: 192.168.254.240/24	ОК		
System Firewall Network:	Cancel	-	
Pueues Hotspot	Cancel		
Files IPsec Interface: ether1 ▼	Apply		
E Log Kid Control	Disable		
A RADIUS Neighbors		=	
X Tools Packing	Comment		
Mew Terminal Pool	Сору		
Pool     Pool     Pool     Otems     Otems	Remove		
Partition SMB enabled			
SMB     enabled     enabled     SMP     Services     New WinBox Settings	_		
🙍 😢 Manual Services			
🗧 💿 New WinBox Settings			

2) Configure a default route - Go to: IP > Routes > Click +

Sadmin@CC:2D:E0:B	1:30:E6 (MikroTik) - WinBox v6.46.3 on hEX (mmips)	-		×
Session Settings Das	hboard			
Safe Mode	Session: CC:2D:E0:B1:30:E6	Time:	00:34:13	
A Guick Set     CAPsMAN     CAPsMAN     Ime Interfaces     Wreless     Switch     Camera Switch	Session:       CC:2D:E0:B1:30:E6         New Route         General Attributes         Dst. Address:       0:0.0.0/0         Gateway:       192:168:254:254         Check Gateway:       Image: Comparison of the second s	Time:		el y ent
Partition				
Manual				
New WinBox	enabled active			

3) Configure a password - Go to: System > Password

Change	
Old Password:	Change
New Password:	Cancel
Confirm Password:	

4) Shutdown box and place on the network: System > Shutdown

**Note:** Configurations changes made on vLinks Central take effect immediately, there are no added steps required to save the configurations.

5) Physical Placement - Place the vLinks Central box on the production network using Adapter 1.



Model: VLC-5SM

6) Test connectivity – Using WinBox login into the IP address of the box. Go to: Tools > Ping to test connectivity to default gateway and any off-subnet resource.

Ping							×
General Ad	dvanced					Start	
Ping T	o: 8.8.8.8					Stop	
Interfac	e:				▼   [	Close	
	ARP Ping					New Window	v
Packet Cour	nt:				<b>•</b>		
Timeou	ut: 1000				ms		
Seq # A Hos	st	Time	Reply Size	TTL	Status		•
0 8.8		31ms	50	54			
1 8.8		29ms	50	54			
2 8.8		29ms	50	54			
3 8.8	.8.8	29ms	50	54			
4 items 4	of 4 packets rece 0% pa	icket loss	Min: 29 m	s Av	g: 29 ms	Max: 31 m	s

7) Connect a second cable using Adapter 2 directly into any open port on the CGX Access Appliance. Take note of the port used on the CGX Access appliance for later configuration. This is a direct connection between the vLinks Central and CGX Access appliance.



8) Once connected to the CGX Access Appliance, Login into CGX Access web interface.

Go to:	Configuration 2	> vLinks	Manager
--------	-----------------	----------	---------

vLinks Config	uration							C Refresh
vLink Servers								
Add New Server   M	lanage Server Models	Manage Certs						
Name	IP Address	Port	Model	VLAN ID F	Range	Username	Action	
vLinks Add New vLink								
ID	Name	Config Key		Source IP	Server		Revision	Action
vLinks Auto-Config Config Key	vLinks Auto-Configuration Config Key Update							
Warning! The Config Key must be set to accept vLink requests.								
ID	Name	Config Key		Source IP	Serv	ver	Act	ion

9) Select Add New Server and complete the registration process

Add New Server	
Name	vLinks HQ
IP Address	192.168.254.240
Port	1194
Model	5 port small ~
Trunk Port	ether2 ~
VLAN ID Range	1-50
Username	admin
Password	•••••
Change Password	
	Save Cancel

**Name** – Use any name to help you distinguish this vLinks Central from other vLinks Central you may deploy.

IP Address – Use the Static IP address that was set in Step 1 above

**Port** – Port 1194 is the recommended default port

VLAN ID Range – A 5 port vLinks Central can support 50 remote subnets, so you can configure a range of 50 VLAN IDs. You can use any VLAN range desired. To avoid confusion, it is recommended these VLAN ranges be outside the range of other VLAN IDs used on your corporate network. The 12-port vLinks Central can support 200 remote subnets, and can be configured with a range of 200 VLAN IDs.

Username – The default username is admin

Password – The default password in blank. It recommended you create a secure admin password.

Once saved, the above settings will be pushed to the vLinks Central server and the vLinks Central will be ready to accept connections from vLinks Remote network extenders.

vLink Servers						
Add New Server   Manag	ge Server Models   Manage	e Certs				
Name	IP Address	Port	Model	VLAN ID Range	Username	Action
vLinks HQ	192.168.254.240	1194	5 port small	1-50	admin	🗹 🗶 🙎 🗙

## vLinks Remote Setup

The vLinks Remote boxes have minimal configuration requirements. The recommended deployment technique is to leverage the Auto Configuration feature to pull the necessary configuration details from the CGX Access server. This section will detail the steps to use the Auto Configuration method.

1) To allow Auto Configuration a Config Key must be set within the vLinks Manager.

Requesting Config	guration				
Config Key	secret1	Update			
ID	Name	Config Key	Source IP	Server	Action

2) vLinks Remotes are configure to support DHCP by default. You can attach the vLinks Remote to any DHCP enabled network, and then use the web interface to configure the Auto Configuration.

📦 vLink-HongKong - LuCl - Mozilla Firefox	-		×
Ink-HongKong - LuCl × +			
← → C û 🛛 https://192.168.254.112/cgi-bin/luci … 🖂 🏠	III\ 🗉	) (2)	≡
vLink-HongKong			^
Authorization Required Please enter your username and password.			
Username root			
Password			
La	ogin F	Reset	
EasyNAC / V-Link 3.2.0			
			~

The default account is root. The default password is GlassDoor2020.

3) Configure the basic information required to sync with the CGX Access Appliance – Go to: System > Auto Configuration

vLink-HongKong	Status <del>-</del>	System <del>-</del>	Logout		UNSAVED CHANGES: 1
VLINK Configura CONFIG VLINK Name		Password Auto Config Diagnostics Backup / F Firmware Reboot			
CGX-Access		68.254.250 ample: vlink-s	erver.infoexpr	ess.com	
Config Key		1 XA Server Co	nfig Key		
IP Proto		work Configu	ration	~	
NTP Serve		⊃ Server			
Auto DNS	_	nchecked, the	e advertised D	NS server addresses	are ignored
				Save & Apply	Save Reset

Save & Apply the settings

vLink Name – Any name to help you distinguish this vLinks Remote from other sites

**CGX-Access** – Provide the Management IP address of the CGX Access that the vLinks Central is attached to. It will use this IP to download the auto configuration.

**Config Key** – This key must match the key configured in CGX Access to allow the automated configuration downloads

**IP Proto** – Use this field to change to a Static IP if required. For simplified deployment, DHCP is recommended as each vLinks Remote will have the same configuration and can then be used on any network.

**NTP Server** – A NTP server is critical to maintain time-sensitive tunnels with the vLinks Central. **Warning:** If time is out of sync, the connection to the vLinks Central will fail.

Auto DNS – It's recommended to use DNS server where available

**Static IP** - When assigning a Static IP address, it will take a few extra steps to set the configuration.

A. Configure **all** auto configuration settings including the CGX-Access address and configuration key with the Static IP and prefix (the netmask).

VLink Configurat	ion
VLINK Name	v-Links-hK
	<ul> <li>vLink Name</li> <li>Example: VLINK-NewYork</li> </ul>
CGX-Access	192.168.254.250
	② Example: vlink-server.infoexpress.com
Config Key	secret1
	② CGXA Server Config Key
IP Proto	Static
	(2) Network Configuration
IP Address	192.168.253.51
Prefix	24
Gateway	192.168.253.254
NTP Server	0.openwrt.pool.ntp.org
	(2) NTP Server
DNS Server	192.168.253.100
	DNS Server

B. Save and Apply Changes. A message will be shown that it Failed to confirm. This is expected if the IP address has changed.

vi ink Configuration	
Failed to confirm apply within 30s, waiting for rollback	

C. Move the vLinks Remote to a network you can access the new IP address and login again. Verify all the Auto Configuration settings are correct. If not, set all the Auto-configuration settings, and Save and Apply again. This time a confirmation should be shown that the Configuration has been applied.



- **Tip:** To perform the verification in step C, it may be useful to set a static IP on your laptop and connect directly to the vLinks remote.
- 4) Physical Placement Place the vLinks Remote box on the remote network using Adapter 1 (eth0). Adapter 1 is used for tunneling Layer-2 traffic from the remaining 4 ports (eth1-eth4) back to the CGX Access appliance.



Adapter 1 is not protected, so if this subnet needs protection, a second cable should be attached to Adapter 2 (eth1). Each vLinks Remote can protect 4 subnets.



5) Accept vLinks Remotes - Once placed on the remote networks the vLinks Remotes will connect to CGX Access to request configurations.

Configuration > vLinks Manager Click the Accept button as shown below.

Requesting Config	guration				
Config Key	secret1	Update			
ID	Name	Config Key	Source IP	Server	Action
b4:fb:e4:1d:67:a7	vLink-HongKong	secret1	192.168.254.112	vLinks HQ ~	

Once Accepted the vLinks Remote will be shown in your vLinks list.

vLinks Add New vLink						
ID	Name	Config Key	Source IP	Server	Revision	Action
b4:fb:e4:1d:67:a7	vLink-HongKong	secret1	192.168.254.112	vLinks HQ	1585805456 (20/04/02 13:30:56)	ď X

6) The last step is to configure the CGX Access Adapter settings to protect the remote segments. On the CGX Access appliance take note of which adapter the vLinks Central was plugged into, during Step 7 of the vLinks Central setup.

On the web GUI - Go to: Configuration > Appliance. Click the + button next to the appropriate adapter to add a VLAN

System Configuration: 🖁						
Date and Time: Thu Apr 2 14:10:44 SGT	2020 <u>Change</u>					
Configure Networking:						
	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	vLinks	Configuration State VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:42	192.168.254.250/255.255.255.0	192.168.254.254	100			Managed IP 🚯
Adapter #2 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:43	/		500			
Adapter #3 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:44	1		1000			Off v +
Adapter #4 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:45	/		1500			Off v

Add Vlan	×
VLAN ID (1-4094)	
1	
DHCP V	
IP / Netmask	
Gateway	
vLinks	
No vLinks 🗸	
No vLinks	
vLink-HongKong	Cancel Save

VLAN ID – Specify any unique VLAN ID that was defined during the vLinks Central. Normally 1-50 by default. On vLinks Remote each Adapter(eth1-eth4) that is active will use a VLAN ID.

**DHCP** \ **Static** – Each adapter(eth1-eth4) will use an IP address if the port is active. If using DHCP this address will be auto assigned. If using a Static environment, the Static IP is configured in this step.

vLinks – Use the dropdown box to select the appropriate vLinks for this remote network. If the vLinks box is not shown, confirm it has been accepted during the Auto Configuration stage.

## Note: This process would be repeated for each remote subnet that is be to protected. Up to 4 subnets per vLinks.

Once network additions have been made, click the Submit button to activate changes. There will be a delay as each subnet using DHCP will requests an IP assignment.

_								
Date and Time: Thu Apr 2 14:21:10 SGT	2020 <u>Change</u>							
onfigure Networking:								
	IP / Netmask	Gateway	Metric	VLAN ID	vLinks	Configuration	State	VLAN
Adapter #1 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:42	192.168.254.250/255.255.255.0	192.168.254.254	100			Managed IP	Ŷ	+
Adapter #2 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:43	/ 192.168.253.51/255.255.255.0	192.168.253.254	500	1	vLink-HongKong 🗸	Off v DHCP v	Ŷ	+
Adapter #3 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:44	/		1000			Off 🗸		+
Adapter #4 MAC: ac:1f:6b:6c:ef:45	/		1500			Off v		+

If successful you will see an IP address has been obtain, and device monitoring will be active. Go to: NAC > Network Map

CGX Access 🗾	nabled		
Default configuration (a	oplied to all subnets) Show Confi	guration	
Subnets			
Network	Last seen	Mode 💌	
192.168.254.0/24	0 second ago	Monitor	Show Configuration
192.168.253.0/24	0 second ago	Monitor	Show Configuration

Deployment is complete and devices from the remote sites will now be shown in the System Overview and the Device Manager, just as other devices are.

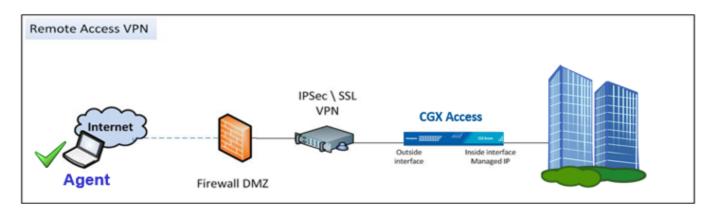
**Warning:** A NTP server is critical to maintain time-sensitive tunnels with the vLinks Central. If time is out of sync, the connection to the vLinks Central will fail.

# Appendix C – Inline Enforcement

## **Inline Enforcement Overview**

The Inline Enforcement Module (Inline EM) controls access to the network through an Access Control List associated with the outside NIC. This module can be used to control access for remote access servers, remote access VPNs, and site to site VPNs.

The Inline EM is available in the EasyNAC product family with CGX Access appliances. When using the Inline EM, the CGX Access appliance is placed in between the network and the network access device, such as a remote access VPN server.



## Features

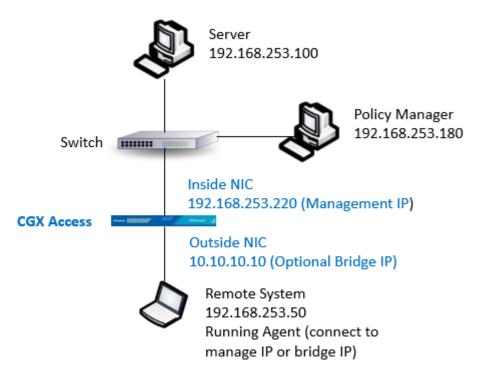
The Inline EM supports the following features:

- Bridges traffic to avoid network topology changes
- Optimized to handle continuous high traffic loads
- Option for automatic failover through STP or KSTP if a redundant server is present

## Requirements

- CGX Access must be physically placed between the inside (trusted) network and the remote access gateways such as VPN concentrators.
- Physical Appliance or virtual appliance with a least two network interfaces
- Endpoint Systems must use agents to pass a compliance check.
- VPN must pass TCP 11698 into the network (Agent uses TCP 11698)
- VPN Server must use an IP Pool, so every connected device has a unique IP address.

## Sample Test Network



This is a minimal configuration to test and evaluate the Inline EM. Although company networks are not this simple, it can be used to test the features in a controlled test environment. All systems in this configuration are connected to the same subnet.

CGX Access is placed between a single PC which simulates the remote system, and the rest of the LAN which represents the inside network. The inside NIC is connected to the switch closest to the internal network, and the outside NIC is connected to the remote system.

The agent communicates with the Managed IP or the bridge virtual IP address.

Note: If the remote PC is connected directly to CGX Access, a crossover cable may be required.

## Configuration

This Configuration steps for the Inline EM consist of:

- Choose the proper location to connect the inline appliance
- Configure the network interfaces
- Set Bridge IP (recommended when using multiple inline appliances)
- Set Access Control List (ACL) rules
- Set the Enforcement Ranges
- Enable Enforcement Mode

## Location

The Inline EM restricts traffic from remote systems, so the outside NIC must face the remote access servers and the inside NIC must face the internal network. When using the Inline EM, CGX Access is usually placed between the VPN and the default router on the network. The Inline EM bridges traffic so network routing tables do not need to be changed.

With this configuration, remote agents communicate to CGX Access Management IP or bridge IP address. The bridge IP is virtual and is recommended for deployments where multiple inline appliances have been deployed to ensure scalability and compatibility with other addresses.

## **Network Interfaces**

To Setup the Inline Enforcement

- In CGX Access, go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings
- Click on Inline Enforcement:



• Enable Bridge Mode

Module Configuration -> Bridge Managements 💕		
Version: 10.1.211129		
Bridge Mode ON		
Configure Bridge Module:		
Spanning Tree Protocol	STP 🔹	Key
Inside Network Adapter	Adapter #1 🔹	
Outside Network Adapter	•	
Bridge IP/Netmask	198.151.234.241/255.2	255.255.255
Adapter Redundancy	Disabled •	
Inside Network - Second Adapter	•	
Outside Network - Second Adapter	•	
Submit		
Access Control List (ACL)		
Enforcement Ranges		

- Use STP to protect against network loops from misconfigured networks
- Select the Inside Network Adapter

- Select the Outside Network Adapter
- Set a Bridge IP address or maintain the default value (See below for more details)

Module Configuration -> Bridge Managements 😰	
Version: 10.1.211129	
Bridge Mode 🛛 🔿	
Configure Bridge Module:	
Spanning Tree Protocol	STP Key
Inside Network Adapter	Adapter #1
Outside Network Adapter	Adapter #2
Bridge IP/Netmask	198.151.234.241/255.255.255.255
Adapter Redundancy	Disabled <b>v</b>
Inside Network - Second Adapter	T
Outside Network - Second Adapter	T
Submit	
Access Control List (ACL)	
Enforcement Ranges	

• Submit Changes (reboot will be performed)

**Note:** by default, inline enforcement will be disabled so unintended enforcement will not occur. **Note:** Adapter Redundancy could be useful in environments with VPN concentrators configured in an Active \ Passive configuration.

## **Bridge IP**

When endpoint access is controlled by the Inline EM, agents should audit with either the CGX Access Management IP or the Bridge IP address.

The Bridge IP allows for optimal scalability. Traffic to the bridge IP address is transparently intercepted when received on CGX Access appliances through the outside NIC. Using the same bridge IP address is important when there are multiple CGX Access servers deployed in Inline mode. Larger organizations may have dozens or even hundreds of remote access points. Keeping track of all the corresponding CGX Access addresses for each entry point would be a management burden. By using the same bridge IP address for all audits, CGX Access avoids this problem.

The bridge IP address can be any IP address that the VPN will route to the inside (trusted) network through the bridge interface on the CGX Access server. This ensures connections from agents can audit with the CGX Access appliances. The default bridge IP address is 198.151.234.241/255.255.255.255

Note: It's not typically required to change the default Bridge IP.

## **Access Control List**

The Inline EM has its own ACL that is optimized for wire speed through-put. To edit the ACL click the Configure button.

Module Configuration -> Bridge Manage	ements 😰	
Version: 10.1.211129		
Bridge Mode ON Enforceme	ent Mode OFF	
Configure Bridge Module:		
Spanning Tree Protocol	STP •	Key
Inside Network Adapter	Adapter #1	
Outside Network Adapter	Adapter #2	
Bridge IP/Netmask	198.151.234.241/255	.255.255.255
Adapter Redundancy	Disabled •	
Inside Network - Second Adapter		
Outside Network - Second Adapter		
Submit		
Access Control List (ACL)		Configure
Enforcement Ranges		Configure

For ease of setup, the ACLs are pre-configured with settings that should address most organization requirements.

Global ACL - Devices without agents or not yet auditing is assigned the "global acl".

```
# The global ACL is applied for all endpoints in the enforcement ranges. Other ACLs have priority
and can override the global ACL.
global acl
allow udp any any = 53
allow udp any any = 67
allow tcp any host $BridgeIP = 11698
deny tcp any any = 11698 redirect $BridgeIP 11698
deny tcp any any = 80 redirect $RemediationPortal 80
deny tcp any any = 443 redirect $RemediationPortal 443
```

- DNS and DHCP traffic are also allowed to pass through the appliance, even when restricted.
- Agent audit traffic (TCP 11698) will be redirected to the Bridge IP, so agents can audit with the inline appliance, even if the agents are configured to audit with a different IP address.
- The Global ACL will also redirect web browsers to the Remediation portal to allow for the download of agents or end-user communications.

Full-Access ACL - When a device is passing an agent audit, it will be assigned the "full-access" ACL.

```
# ACL for "full-access" endpoints
acl full-access
allow tcp any host $BridgeIP = 11698
deny tcp any any = 11698 redirect $BridgeIP 11698
allow ip any any
```

- The full-access ACL will allow Any IP traffic. This will override the Global ACL.
- The Agent audit traffic (TCP 11698) will continue to be redirected to the Bridge IP for continuous compliance checks.

**Restrict-agent ACL -** When a device is failing an agent audit, it will be assigned the "restrict-agent" ACL.

```
# ACL for "restrict-agent" endpoints
acl restrict-agent
allow tcp any host $RemediationPortal = 80
allow tcp any host $RemediationPortal = 443
```

You can customize the "restrict-agent" ACL to allow remediation resources. In the example above, a restricted devices can still access the remediation portal over port 80 and 443. This portal can be used to host automatic remediation scripts. The default "restrict-agent" doesn't conflict with the "global-acl" so the global-acl will also be applied.

Restricted ACL - When a device is blacklisted, it will be assigned the "restricted" ACL.

```
# ACL for "restricted" endpoints
acl restricted
```

This default "restricted" acl is blank. No lines override the "global-acl" so the global-acl will also be applied.

For additional help with the ACL, you can click the Help button.



## **Enforcement Ranges**

When working with Inline enforcement it's common to need to limit the range of IP addresses that are subject to enforcement. For example, if deployed behind a Firewall \ VPN, you would want to set the enforcement range to only include the IP ranges of the VPN IP pool. When this is setup, only remote VPN users would be required to pass an agent audit. Note: For Testing purpose, you may want to limit the range to just one IP.

#### To Setup the Enforcement Ranges

• Click on Configure

Module Configuration -> Bridge Manage	ements 울	
Version: 10.1.211129		
Bridge Mode ON Enforceme	ent Mode OFF	
Configure Bridge Module:		
Spanning Tree Protocol	STP	Key
Inside Network Adapter	Adapter #1	Y
Outside Network Adapter	Adapter #2	T
Bridge IP/Netmask	198.151.234.241/2	255.255.255.255
Adapter Redundancy	Disabled	Y
Inside Network - Second Adapter		Ŧ
Outside Network - Second Adapter		Ŧ
Submit		
Access Control List (ACL)		Configure
Enforcement Ranges		Configure

• Choose the Add Action

CGX Access Standalone	Configuration -	Policies -	Control -	Visibility	•		Welcome admin	Sign Out
CGX Access Management     CGX Access Logs     Agent Logging Server	Module Config	<u>juration</u> -> <u>Brid</u> orcement Range		<u>nt</u> -> Enforc	ement Ranges:	<b>9</b>		
Inline Enforcement     RADIUS Proxy     About     Support Tools	Action Add v Add	ID S	tart IP	E	nd IP	Submit Submit Action		
Support tools	Delete		Start IP		Er	nd IP		
	Reset	]	Upload	to Server		Back		

• Complete the Start IP and End IP of the range and Click Submit

Module Configurat		g <u>e Management</u> -> Enforcement R es:	anges: 😰	
Action	ID	Start IP	End IP	Submit
Add 🔻		192.168.253.50	192.168.253.99	Submit Action
ID		Start IP		End IP

- When all ranges have been specified Click "Upload to Server" button
- Once Enforcement range is set, turn on Enforcement to test.



## **Agent Requirement**

The Inline Enforcement Module requires the use of agents on the remote endpoints.

Easy NAC virtual appliances come with default agents and default polices that can be used for testing or as a baseline to start building your custom compliance policies. An agent license is required to use the agents.

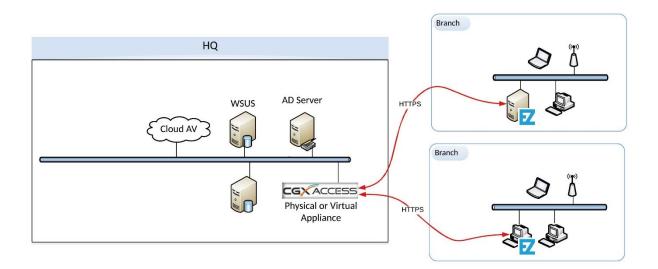
To customize the policies or agent, you will need to install the CyberGatekeeper Policy Manager (CGPM). Contact InfoExpress or your partner for the CGPM installer.

# **Appendix D – Enforcer Agents**

## **Enforcer Agents Overview**

The Easy NAC solution uses CGX Access appliances for visibility and protection of the network. To provide visibility and protection, the CGX Access appliance requires layer-2 visibility of the subnets it's protecting. Having layer-2 visibility at the main site can be easily achieved with trunk ports or standard access ports. However, getting layer-2 visibility for remote sites can be more challenging. At the remote sites, the Enforcer Agent can be deployed on Windows platforms to get this visibility and local enforcement at remote sites.

The Enforcer Agent architecture is shown below. At remote sites, the Enforcer Agent software is installed on a Windows 64-bit OS. The agent would then communicate back to the CGX Access appliance to report in real-time what devices are on the network. The CGX Access appliance would then profile these devices and tell the Enforcer Agent what access should be assigned. The Enforcer agent would then apply the ARP enforcement. Both. MPLS and NAT'd network types are supported. However, with NAT'd networks only rogue prevention features are supported, as the CGX Access appliance may not be able to fully profile the remote devices. If using NAT'd subnets, the vLinks solution may be a better approach to extend the protection.



Adding Enforcer Agents to extended CGX Access protection to remote sites is a simple process that consists on installing the Enforcer Agent and then accepting this agent in the CGX Access management interface.

## **Enforcer Agent Install**

Contact your InfoExpress partner, representative or support for a copy of the EZ-Defaults Enforcer Agent Installer. This Enforcer Agents will work with CGX Access Appliances version 3.1.220317 and above that are using default shared settings. Enforcer agents are licensed separately.

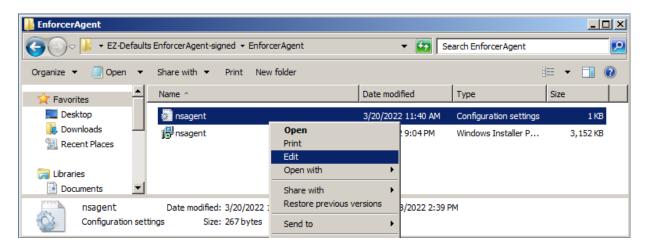
**Note:** If your organization is using the CyberGatekeeper Agents, with unique shared settings, then it may be necessary to build an Enforcer Agent in the CyberGatekeeper Policy Manager so it's compatible with your organization's unique shared settings.

The Enforcer Agent is supported on Windows 10 or higher and Windows Server 2012 or higher; 64-bit OS is required. The agent is light-weight and works with the minimum OS requirements.

The Enforcer Agent installer will be provided as a compressed folder that contains two files. An MSI installer (nsagent.msi) and a configuration file (nsagent.ini).

Step 1 – Unzip the package

Step 2 – Edit the Configuration settings (nsagent.ini). Right click and select Edit.

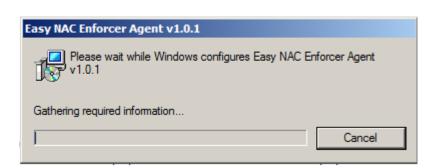


**Step 3** - Change the ServerAddr value to point the Management IP of your CGX Access appliance. Alternatively, you can add a domain name entry for CGX-Access in the DNS server.

📗 nsagent - Notepad	- U ×
File Edit Format View Help	
<pre>scheme = "https"; serverAddr = "192.168.18.220"; ServerPort = 8889; Engine = "kernelrings"; CustomerId = "cust-001"; SetupToken = "set-001";  PollingDelay = 2; PollingTimeout = 100; ActiveTimeout = 300; LogFullJson = 0; TraceLevel = "error"; PsKey = "";</pre>	
4	

Step 4 – Install the Agent – Right Click and select Install (Administrative Rights Required)

🔒 EnforcerAgent								l ×
CO v 🍌 ▼ EZ-Defaults	EnforcerAgent-signed 👻 EnforcerAg	jent	<b>-</b>	🥎 🛛 Se	arch EnforcerAgent			2
Organize 🔻 📳 Install 👻	Share with 👻 New folder					-		?
Favorites	Name *		Date modified		Туре	Size		
Nesktop	ansagent		3/20/2022 11:4	IMA OF	Configuration settings		1 KB	
Downloads	7 nsagent	Install	2/19/2022 0:0/	PM	Windows Installer P	3,1	152 KB	
Libraries		Repair Uninstall Troubleshoot o Open with	compatibility					
nsagent Windows Installer	Date modified: 3/18/2022 9 Package Size: 3.07 MB	Share with Restore previo	► Nus versions	/2022 9:	:04 PM			



**Note:** The install process will take only take about a minute to complete, and the dialog box will close itself automatically.

To confirm the Enforcer Agent was installed properly, Run Services.msc and confirm the following process is started and Startup type is Automatic.

InfoExpress	Name 🔺	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As
EasyNacEnforcerAgentService	Runction Discovery Resource Publica	Publishes t		Manual	Local Service
Service	🔍 Group Policy Client	The servic	Started	Automatic	Local System
Stop the service	🔍 Health Key and Certificate Managem	Provides X		Manual	Local System
Restart the service	🥋 Human Interface Device Access	Enables ge		Manual	Local System
	🌼 IKE and AuthIP IPsec Keying Modules	The IKEEX	Started	Automatic	Local System
Description:	🐘 InfoExpress EasyNacEnforcerAgent	InfoExpres	Started	Automatic	Local System
InfoExpress	🥋 Interactive Services Detection	Enables us		Manual	Local System
EasyNacEnforcerAgentService Service	🔍 Internet Connection Sharing (ICS)	Provides n		Disabled	Local System
Description	🔍 Internet Explorer ETW Collector Ser	ETW Collec		Manual	Local System
	🔍 IP Helper	Provides tu	Started	Automatic	Local System
	🔍 IPsec Policy Agent	Internet Pr	Started	Manual	Network S

## Accepting the Enforcer Agent

Once the agent is installed, go to the CGX Access Appliance, Login into CGX Access web interface.

• Go to: Control > Agent Enforcers

Agent Enfo	rcers					C Refresh
Agent Enforcers						
IP Address	Subnets	Lastseen	State	Location	Actions	
192.168.17.218		1 second ago	none		- Accept	

- Click Accept
- Add a descriptive name in the Location box
- Click Refresh, you will see the subnet range that is being protected and when the agent was last seen.

Agent Enfor	rcers						C Refresh
Agent Enforcers							
IP Address	Subnets	Lastseen	State	Location	Ac	tions	
192.168.17.21	192.168.17.0/24	1 second ago	enabled	Perth Office	•	)isable X 🛆	

**Tip:** It's recommended to configure an alert so if the agent stops communicating back to the appliance you will receive an email alert.

#### Verify Network and Devices are Visible

Once the Enforcer Agent has been Accepted it will be managed like other subnets in your system, and should be seen in the Network Map. By default, it will be in Monitor mode.

• Go to: Control > Network Map

	Network Map			
C	GX Access			
D	efault configuration (applied to	o all subnets) Show Configuratio	n	
s	ubnets			
	Network	Last seen	Mode 💌	
	192.168.18.0/24	9 seconds ago	Monitor ~	Show Configuration
$\langle$	192.168.17.0/24	27 seconds ago	Monitor 🗸	Show Configuration
		Save Cancel Help		

- Go to Visibility > Dashboard
- Check the Widget for Device seen in the last 24 hours



If you have the expected visibility with devices shown from the remote subnet, the Enforcer Agent is working. The existing Policies and Access Groups will now be applied at this remote site.

# Appendix E – WhatsApp Integration

CGX Access can send administrative notifications via WhatsApp and also can be used for guest access approval.

#### Notifications

Edit Setting			ж	
Contact Informatio	n for Notifications			ì
Contact 1		Contact 2		
Name	Admin	Name	Second Admin2	
E-mail Address	cgx@iex.demo	E-mail Address		
SMS Number ( e.g. 16505551212)		SMS Number ( e.g. 16505551212)		
WhatsApp Contact ( e.g. +141552233444)	+65000000	WhatsApp Contact ( e.g. +141552233444)		•
			Save Cancel Help	

In an effort to prevent spam on the WhatsApp network, Meta (formally known as Facebook) requires the use of 3<sup>rd</sup> party API providers. The CGX Access solution was designed to work with Twilio as this API provider. Therefore, in order to use this WhatsApp integration feature, it does require a Twilio account and Facebook Business Verification. Below is the list of prerequisites steps:

## WhatsApp Prerequisites Steps

- 1. An account on Twilio https://www.twilio.com/whatsapp
- A Twilio phone number (Credit Card required)
   Note: using a USA number is the most cost-effective option. \$1 per month for the number, with
   \$0.0135 per WhatsApp message sent. Pricing varies by county. For current pricing, check
   <u>https://www.twilio.com/whatsapp/pricing</u>
- Facebook Business Manager ID <u>https://business.facebook.com</u> <u>Facebook's instructions on setting up a business manager account</u>. Note: Need Facebook Profile (can be personal) to create Facebook Business Manager ID. Organizations can have more than one Business Manager ID, so IT department can create their own.

## WhatsApp Registration Process

#### Step 1: Request access to enable your Twilio number(s) for WhatsApp

In order to enable your Twilio number(s) for WhatsApp, you will need to fill out <u>"Request Access"</u> form with accurate and up-to-date information, including your Facebook Business Manager ID

Note: When asked if working with an ISV or 3<sup>rd</sup>-party, answer NO

After you submit the "Request Access" form, you will receive an email confirming the form submission. Once Twilio reviews your account, you will receive an email with subject "You are now pre-approved to use Twilio APIs for WhatsApp". Final approval is provided by WhatsApp after you submit your sender profile (next step).

#### Step 2: Submit a Sender Profile

<u>Click here</u> or navigate to the Messaging > Senders > WhatsApp Senders section in the Twilio Console. Click the "**Submit a WhatsApp Sender**" button to create a new sender profile.

#### WhatsApp Enabled Senders

To use a number with WhatsApp, you need to register it as a WhatsApp sender. You can use you own number or provision one from Twilio Phone Numbers. C To send notifications, you will also need to use WhatsApp approved message templates. Learn more about creating a sender C



**Note:** Your Sender "Display Name" must be the business name used in the Facebook Business Manager account.

#### Step 3: Approve Twilio to send messages on your behalf

When you receive notice that Twilio has submitted your Display Name and number to WhatsApp, you will need to approve Twilio to send messages on your behalf. You will receive an email to "Approve Twilio to message on behalf of" in Facebook Business Messenger.

Go to the Facebook Business Manager console (the one that you submitted in Step 1) and approve Twilio to "message on behalf of." You can find this request by <u>following this link</u>, or navigating to <u>business.facebook.com</u> > Business Settings > Requests section. Once there, click the **Approve** button.

#### Step 4: Verify your Facebook Business Manager account

After you have "Approved" Twilio to send messages on your behalf, you will be able to verify your Facebook Business Manager account. In the <u>Facebook Business Manager > Settings console</u>, click the **Start** or **Continue** button under in the **Verification** section to complete Facebook Business Verification Process.

You may be required to upload supporting documents to verify your business. See Facebook's <u>guide</u> on uploading official documents to verify your business for more information.

Note: Approval can take several days

#### Step 5: Twilio completes your WhatsApp Sender registration

After you approve Twilio to message on your behalf, Twilio will complete the registration process to register your WhatsApp sender. You will receive an email confirmation that Twilio has finalized the registration of your profile.

#### **Step 6: Submit Message Templates**

To prevent spam only specific pre-approved message templates can be sent via WhatApp. To submit a message template, navigate to Messaging > Senders > <u>WhatsApp Templates</u>.

For Easy NAC integrations, the following four message templates needs to be created.

#### **Template 1: System Notifications**

Template Name: system_notifications Message language: English	Template Category: Alert Update Buttons: None
Message Body:	
Admin alert on system: {{1}} EasyNAC IP: {{2}}	

#### **Template 2: Device Profiler Notifications**

Template Name: device_profiler_notification Message language: English	Template Category: Alert Update Buttons: None
Message Body:	
Admin alert on device {{1}}	

#### **Template 3: Device Notifications**

Template Name: device-notification Template Category: Alert Update Message language: English Buttons: None

Message Body:

Admin alert on device IP: {{1}} MAC: {{2}} Hostname: {{3}} Location: {{4}} Access Group: {{5}} Role: {{6}} OS: {{7}} First Seen: {{8}} Flags/Lists: {{9}} EasyNAC IP: {{10}} Message: {{11}} See Visibility - Alerts and Notifications for details.

#### **Template 4: Guest Notifications**

Template Name: guest-notification Template Category: Alert Update Message language: English Buttons: None Message Body: {{1}} just sent you a network access request. MAC: {{2}} IP: {{3}} Fullname:  $\{\{4\}\}$ Email: {{5}} Phone:  $\{\{6\}\}$ Company:  $\{\{7\}\}$ To grant guest access: Please enter:  $\{\{8\}\}$ To deny guest access: Please enter:  $\{\{9\}\}$ 

**Note:** Additional guest templates may be necessary depending on the guest registration process implemented in your organization.

## **Enabling WhatsApp Alerts**

Once the registration process is complete, it's simple to enable CGX-Access to send admin alerts.

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Server Settings and click on Servers

Here you can input the WhatsApp number that has been approved as WhatsApp Sender. **Note:** The Account ID and Auth Token, can be found in your Twilio Console under Account > General Settings

Edit Setting	×
Active Directory Servers RADIUS Server Radius Clients DHCP Servers Mail Servers Web Proxy Server	
SMS Gateway WhatsApp Provider	
Twilio WhatsApp API	
From Contact +1800000000	
Account ID 3642c0ef8d748379b34ec6353ea:	
Auth Token 96cda3e03fe37a9511d07a2cf061	
Send Message	
Query Settings	
Enable approve guest from WhatsApp	

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings and click on Contact Information for Notifications

Here you can input the WhatsApp number of your admins

ontact Informatio	n for Notifications		
ontact 1		Contact 2	
Name	Admin	Name	Second Admin2
E-mail Address	cgx@iex.demo	E-mail Address	
SMS Number ( e.g. 16505551212)		SMS Number ( e.g. 16505551212)	
WhatsApp Contact ( e.g. +141552233444)	+65000000	WhatsApp Contact ( e.g. +141552233444)	

## **Enabling WhatsApp for Guest Approval**

To enable WhatsApp for Guest approval a few extra configuration steps are required.

• Go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Server Settings and click on Servers

In the same section the WhatsApp number was specified, click the **Enable Guest Access from WhatsApp** and specify the keywords to be used for Approval or Rejection

t Setting		
MS Gateway What	App Provider	
wilio WhatsApp API		
From Contact	+180000000	
Account ID	AC03753642c0ef8d748379b34ec	
Auth Token	96cda3e03fe37a9511d07a2cf061	
Query Settings		
	Enable approve guest from WhatsApp	
Query Interval (Seconds)	120	
Approve guest when	Approve	
matching pattern		
Reject guest when	Reject	
Reject guest when	Reject	

• Go to Configuration → Device Registration Templates >> Guest Registration Templates

In these desired guest templates, add the WhatsApp number that Guest Requests should be sent. Each template can use a different WhatsApp approver.

Edit	Action		[	×
	Confirm Guest	Approval Required by Sponsor 🗸	🗌 Flag Guest	*
		Allow guest to provide sponsor email		
	Approval Email			
	WhatsApp	+65000000		

# Appendix F – 802.1x RADIUS Proxy

## **Radius Proxy Overview**

For customers using 802.1x authentication, the Easy NAC appliance can act as a RADIUS proxy. With this setup, an end-user's 8021.x user name can be captured at login time. In addition, the switch and port the device is connecting from is also capture for reporting purposes. This information can be then be used to enhance our ability to detect and prevent MAC spoofing real-time, and can also be used for Multi-factor Authentication.



## Requirements

- A third-party RADIUS Server
- A working 802.1x environment. Before adding CGX Access as a RADIUS Proxy, first have your wireless controller or switches configured and working with 802.1x and/or MAB.
- Once 802.1x is working as expected, then CGX Access can be added into the RADIUS stream. On the switches, CGXA would be configured as the primary Radius server, and the real RADIUS server as the secondary server, for fail-open purposes.

## Features

• Captures the end-user name which can be used for Multi-Factor Authentication

Check all the fields to be	e included in the fingerprint
MAC Address	
IP Address	
🗸 OS	Windows 🗸
Hostname	
Ports	
Switch Port	
Open Port	
Multi-Factor Authenticat	tion
🗸 User Name	1
🗸 Agent serial number	<u></u>
	easynac\bobby
	easynac\charles

• Captures the switch IP and switch port info, which can be included in a Fingerprint to strength security of Mac Address Bypass (MAB). When enabled a trusted MAC address must be attached to the correct switch and port.

Set device's fingerprint	×
Check all the fields to be incl	uded in the fingerprint
MAC Address	
IP Address	
✓ OS	Embedded/IoT/Linux V
🗹 Hostname	
Ports	
✓ Switch Port	10.20.0.2 ether2 ~
🗹 Open Port	
	tcp:21 tcp:23 tcp:80 tcp:22
	tcp:2000
Multi-Factor Authentication	
User Name	
Agent serial number	
	-
	Cancel Save

## **Configuring Radius Proxy settings on CGX Access**

- In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  General Settings.
- Click on Servers

Edit Setting							×
Active Directory Servers	RADIUS Server	Radius Clients	DHCP Servers	Mail Servers	Web Proxy Server	SMS Gateway	
WhatsApp Provider							
Host or IP	10.20.0.3						
Secret	••••••						
Authentication Type	MSCHAPv2	¥					
	Use for BYOD Au		nterface Authentica	tion			
					Save	Cancel Help	•
WEICOME TIMES WEICOME TO D							

• Under "Radius Server" tab, enter the Hostname or IP address of the Radius server

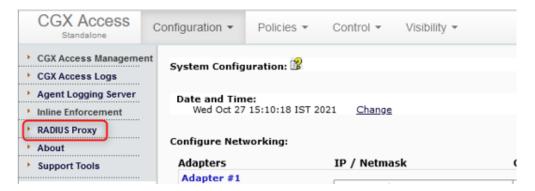
• Enter the shared secret. It should be the same as configured for this CGXA IP under "Radius clients" on the Radius server.

Next, click on "Radius Clients" tab

WhatsApp Provider							
Radis Clients       Host or IP       Password       Add	Active Directory Servers	RADIUS Server	Radius Clients	DHCP Servers	Mail Servers	Web Proxy Server	SMS Gateway
Host or IP Password Add Host or IP Password	WhatsApp Provider						
Password Add Host or IP Password	Radis Clients						
Add Host or IP Password	Host or IP						
Host or IP Password	Password			1			
Host or IP Password							
				-			Add
192.168.10.200	Host or IP	Password					
	192 168 10 200		×				
	152.100.10.200						
	192.100.10.200						
	1921100.101200						
	192.100.10.200						
	1211001101200						

- Enter Radius client (Wifi controller/Switch controller) hostname or IP.
- Enter radius password. This password should match the radius secret configured on the radius client.

In CGX Access GUI go to Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Appliance Settings  $\rightarrow$  Radius Proxy



Enable Radius Proxy Module



- Configure your Wifi Controller or Switch with CGXA IP as the radius server
- Configure the same shared secret as configured in "Radius clients" on CGXA earlier.

	InfoExpress - CGX Access A	Admin × 🧉	[TomatoUSB] Basic Network Set 🗙 🚽	-		- 🗆 X
$\leftarrow$	$\rightarrow$ C C	08	192.168.10.200/#basic-network	asp	☆	. ● ■
	AdvancedTomato Basic Network Settings	≡		Τα	ools 🛠 🛛 Bandwidth 💆	IP Traffic 🗮 🛛 System 🏚
	Status Basic Settings	> •	Enable Wireless	<		^
<b>1</b>	Network		MAC Address	20:AA:4B:CF:B4:82		
			Wireless Mode	Access Point		
			Wireless Network Mode	Auto 🗸		
			SSID	E2500		
•		>	Broadcast	<u>~</u>		
	Port Forwarding Quality of Service	> >	Channel	Auto V Scan Q		
		>	Channel Width	40 MHz 💙		
۶		•	Control Sideband	Upper 💙		
			Security	WPA2 Enterprise V		
			Encryption	TKIP / AES 🗸		
			Shared Key	Random		
			Group Key Renewal	3600 (seconds)		
			Radius Server	10.20.0.10 : 1812		
	(i) v3.5-140 Max					

Connect a wireless end point and enter user credentials configured on Radius Server.

Confirm details on Device manager page on CGXA

All Unique Devic			ess							U		Refresh Export Mon Jan 10 2022 1	
Show Report Filter	in: Pa	st 24 Hours											
Select an Action	~	Apply to select	ted devices										
Select all Action	¥	Apply to selec	ted devices										
Total # of Devices:	6					Make it a Cu	stom Report	Add a Scheduled R	eport Device	s per Page 1	00 Pag	e 1 of 1. First << [1]	>> L:
MAC	Hostname	User	Access Group	Roles	os	Vendor	Flags / Lists	IP Address	Last Seen	Comment	Access Status	Grant Access	(
00:1E:58:A9:C2:A	win10x64-2004	zeeshan (from Radius) s1\zeeshan (from Agent)	full- access	full- access	WinX64 10 Enterprise 6.3 Build 19042 Service Pack None	D-Link Corporation	webserver	192.168.10.7	2022-01-10 11:32:21		•	ON OFF Auto	
General		HCP V	Veb	Radius	State	CGA	DPM L	ast Audit	×				
"NAS-Port- "NAS-Port" "User-Name "Called-St "Calling-St	": <mark>"zeeshan"</mark> ation-Id": " tation-Id": ifier": "20a ndor-Specifi	less-802.1 , 20aa4bcfb4 "001e58a9c a4bcfb482"	11", 182", 22af",										

# Appendix G – Using NPS to Authenticate CGX-Access users

CGX Access can leverage Microsoft Network Policy Server (NPS) and other Radius servers for Management and\or BYOD authentication. The steps below are specific to NPS.

## Add admin group/users to Active Directory

1.1 Create a security user group in Active Directory named "CGX-Admin"

Active Directory Users and Computers			_ 8 ×
Eile Action View Help			
🗢 🔿 🖄 📅 🔏 🗎 💥 🖻 🕰 😹			
Active Directory Users and Computers [s1m3.S1.	Name A	Type Description	×
Image: Several Queries     Image: Several Queries       Image: Several Queries		User       Dedicated User to run Whare Converter Standalone server jobs.         User       User         User       User         User       Image: CockAdmin         Via CockAdmin       Properties         Via CockAdmin       Properties         Via CockAdmin       Image: CockAdmin         User       CockAdmin         User	
	SCGX-Admin	User Security Group - Global InfoExpress	
	CONHUMIT	Security Group - Good infractores	
	Contract of Contra	Jeen North Stock - Stock - Indexpress	
		User	
		User Security Group - Global	
		security Group - Global	
		User	
		Security Group - Do Members in this group cannot have their passwords replicated to any read-only domain controllers in the domain	
		Security Group - Do Members who have administrative access to DHCP service	<u>•</u>
灯 Start 🧉 🚄 🕘 🔹 🔋 🔁 Active Directo	ry User	v 🖪 🖉	👌 🚯 10:20 AM

1.2 Add members to this group who should have admin read-write access to CGX-Access

Active Directory Users and Computers				_ 8 ×
Eile Action View Help				
(* *) 2 📆 🔏 🗎 🗙 🗟 🕹	🛛 📷 🗏 🐮 🗑 🔁 🕱			
Active Directory Users and Computers [s1m3.S1.	Name 🔶	Туре	Description	1
💽 🧮 Saved Queries		User	Dedicated User to run VMware Converter Standalone server jobs.	
🖃 🏥 S1.com	and the second sec	User		
🗉 📫 Builtin	Contraction of Contraction	User		
E Computers	Contraction of the second seco	User		
E Domain Controllers		User		
ForeignSecurityPrincipals	Sector Se	User		
Managed Service Accounts     S1CGX	and the second sec	Us CGX-Admin Pro	roperties 2 X	
E Users	and the second sec	US		
E Godia	and the second sec		mbers Member Of Managed By	
	and the second sec	Us		
		Us Members:		
	Sector Se	Us Name	Active Directory Domain Services Folder	_
	and the second sec	Se 🛃 adminog	gex S1.com/Users	
		Se		
		Us		
		Us		
		Us		
		Se		
		Se	all read-only domain controllers in the domain	
		Se	ai read-only domain condiciers in the domain	
		Us		
		Us	et_wp.exe)	
		Us		
		Us		
		Us		
		Se	the Active Directory	
		Se Add	Bemove	
		Se	Tework	
		Se		
		Us		
		Se	OK Cancel Arr/y	
			soar Created on 20-11-2019 for 10-2 permission test	
		Security Group - Glob	obal InfoExpress	
		User		
		User		_
		Security Group - Glob		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		Security Group - Glob	obal InfoExpress	
		User		
		User		
		User		
		Security Group - Glob		
		Security Group - Glob	30a	
		User Sociality Crown, Do	Members in this group cannot have their passwords replicated to any read-only domain controllers in the domain	
( ) )			Members in the group cannot have their passwords replicated to any read-only domain controllers in the domain Members who have administrative access to DHCP service	-
	0	becany droup - bo.		
💐 Start 🖉 🥖 🕘 🦉 🔁 Active Directo	ry User			« 🛄 🗳 📑 🎲 10:20 AM

## **Configure Network Policy Server**

2.1 Open "Network Policy Server" and add CGX-Access as a radius client.

Network Policy Server				
Eile Action View Help				
(= =) 🖄 📅 🔽 🖬				
NPS (Local)     RADIUS Clients and Servers     RADIUS Clients     Remote RADIUS Server Groups	RADIUS di	ients allow you to sp	ecify the network acc	cess servers, that provide access to your network.
Remote RADIUS Server Groups     Policies	Friendly Name	IP Address	Device Manufactu	rer NAP-Capable Status
Image: Section Protection			RADIUS Standard	
Recounting	1		RADIUS Standa BADIUS Standa	CG5_10 Properties
	and the second		RADIUS Standa	Settings
	1		RADIUS Standa	
	12.		RADIUS Standa RADIUS Standa	₩ Enable this RADIUS client
	and the second s		RADIUS Standa	Erendy name:
	a construction of the		RADIUS Standa	CGS_10
	and the second s		RADIUS Standa RADIUS Standa	Address (IP or DNS):
	1000		RADIUS Standa	10 20.0.10 Verfy
	a sector		RADIUS Standa	Specify RADIUS Standard for most RADIUS clients, or select the RADIUS client vendor
	1.000		RADIUS Standa RADIUS Standa	apedity NAUOS standard for most NAUOS clerits, or select the NAUOS clerit vendor from the list.
	CGS_10	10.20.0.10	RADIUS Standa	
			,	Vendor name: RADIUS Standard
				To manually type a shared secret, click Manual, To automatically generate a shared secret,
				click Generate. You must configure the RADIUS client with the same shared secret entered here. Shared secrets are case enaitive.
				C Manual C Generate
				Shared secret:
				Cgnfmm shared secret:
				Access-Bequest messages must contain the Message-Authenticator attribute
				RADIUS clent is NAP-capable
				OK Cancel Apply
	1			
	L			
🎝 Start 🥔 🚄 🕘 🔹 🌍 Network Policy Ser	ver			

2.2 Create a new Connection request policy with parameters as shown in screenshots below.

윶 Network Policy Server		
Eile Action View Help		
🧇 🔿 🙍 💽 📓 🖬		
NPS (Local)     RADIUS Clients and Servers     RADIUS Clients     RADIUS Clients     Remote RADIUS Server Groups     Folicies	Policy Name	designate whether connection requests are processed locally or forwarded to remote RADIUS servers. For NAP VPN or 802.1X, you must configure PEAP authentication in connection request policy. Status Processing Order Source
Connection Request Policies	Secure Wireless Connections	Enabled 1 Unspecified
Health Policies	CXGA_Radius_Request_Policy	Enabled CXCA_Radius_Request_Policy Properties
Sources	and the second second	Daubed Overview Conditions Settings
National Accounting		Enabled
		Enabled Polcy game: SXGA_Radus_Request_Polcy
		Enabled
		Enabled Policy State If enabled, NPS evaluates this policy while processing connection requests. If disabled, NPS does not evalue this policy.
		I Polcy grabled
	CXGA_Radius_Request_Policy	
		Network connection method -     Select the type of network access server that sends the connection request to NPS. You can select either the network access server
	Conditions - If the following conditions are me	
	Condition Value	C Type of network access geneer:
	NAS IPv4 Address 10.20.0.10	
		C Vendorspecific:
		10 ===
	1	
	Settings - Then the following settings are app	st l
	Setting Value	
	Authentication Provider Local Computer	
	Override Authentication Disabled	
		OK Cancel Apply
🎦 Start 🖉 🥖 😻 👋 🚱 Network Policy S	ierver	< 🛄 🖉 🍘 🖓 🕞 10:20 AA

2.3 Add CGX-Access IP address in "Conditions" tab as "NAS IPv4 address"

Ş Network Policy Server				_ 6 ×
Eile Action View Help				
(+				
Koral)     ADJUS Clients and Servers     RADJUS Clients	Connection request policies allow	you to designate	whether connection requests are processed locally or forwarded to remote RADIUS servers. For NAP VPN or 802.1X, you must configure PEAP authent	cation in connection request policy.
Remote RADIUS Server Groups	Policy Name	Status	Processing Order Source	1
Connection Request Policies	Secure Wireless Connections	Enabled		
Network Policies	CXGA_Radius_Request_Policy	Enabled		त
Health Policies	and the second s	Enabled	CXGA_Radius_Request_Policy Properties	
Image: Second		Enabled	Overview Conditions Settings	
Not the second s		Enabled		
	4	Enabled	Configure the conditions for this network policy.	
		Enabled	If conditions match the connection request, NPS uses this policy to authorize the connection request. If conditions do not match the	
		Enabled	connection request, NPS skips this policy and evaluates other policies, if additional policies are configured.	
	1			
			Condition Value	
			1020 NAS IPv4 Address 10.20.0.10	
	CXGA_Radius_Request_Policy			
	Conditions - If the following conditions ar	e met:		
	Condition Value			
	NAS IPv4 Address 10.20.0.10			
	10.20.0.10			
			Condition description:	
			The NAS IP Address condition specifies a character string that is the IP address of the NAS. You can use pattern matching syntax to specify IP	
			networks.	
	Settings - Then the following settings are	e applied:		
	Setting Value			
	Authentication Provider Local Compu	ter	Add Edit <u>R</u> emove	
	Override Authentication Disabled			
			OK Cancel Apply	
灯 Start 🥔 🧉 😻 👋 😽 Network Policy Se	erver			« 🛄 🗳 🍺 10:20 AM

2.4 Under "Settings" tab select "Authenticate requests on this server"

Network Policy Server				_ 6 ×
Eile Action View Help				
(=				
NPS (Local)     RADIUS Clients and Servers     RADIUS Clients     RADIUS Clients     Remote RADIUS Server Groups     If Remote RADIUS Server Groups     If Policies	Policy Name	Status	anate whether connection requests are processed locally or forwarded to remote RADIUS servers. For NAP VPN or 502.1X, you must configure PEAP authentication in connection request policy.	
Connection Request Policies	Secure Wireless Connections	Enabled		
<ul> <li>Network Policies</li> <li>Health Policies</li> <li>Network Access Protection</li> </ul>	CXGA_Radius_Request_Policy	Enabled Enabled Enabled	CAA_kaonis_kequest_rolky properties	
Accounting		Enabled Enabled	Ind Configure the settings for this network policy.	
	Contract of the local division of the local	Enabled Enabled		
	CKGA, Radus, Request, Poloy Conditions - If the following conducts are im Conditions - If the following conducts are im Conditions - Then the following settings are app Settings - Then the following settings are app Setting	et:	Alternication Methods          Sectify whether connection requests an processed locally, are forwarded to renote         Required Authonication         Bandard         Vendor Specific         OK         Cancel	
	J			
🏷 Start 🥖 🧉 🔌 👋 🚱 Network Policy Ser	ver			10:20 AM

2.5 Add a new Network policy for CGX-Access

💫 Network Policy Server			_ <del>6</del> ×
Eile Action View Help			
🧇 🔿 😰 🖬 🛛 🖬			
NPS (Local)     Gamma RADIUS Clients and Servers     RADIUS Clients	Network policies allow you to designate who is	s authorized to connect to the network and the circumstances under which they can or cannot connect.	
Remote RADIUS Server Groups	Policy Name	Status Processing Order Access Type Source	
Connection Request Policies	Secure Wireless Connections	Enabled 1 Grant Access Unspecified	
Network Policies Health Policies	CGXA_Radius_Network_Policy	CGXA_Radius_Network_Policy Properties	
Network Access Protection     Accounting		Overview Conditions Constraints Settings	
Accounting		Policy name: CGXA_Radius_Network_Policy	-
		Policy State	
		If enabled, NPS evaluates this policy while performing authorization. If disabled, NPS does not evaluate this policy.	I
		V Policy enabled	)
	CGXA_Radius_Network_Policy	Access Permission	
	Conditions - If the following conditions are met:	If conditions and constraints of the network policy match the connection request, the policy can either grant access or deny access. What is access permission?	
	Condition Value NAS IPv4 Address 10.20.0.10		
	User Groups S1\CGX-Admin	© Grant access. Grant access if the connection request matches this policy.	
		C Deny access. Deny access if the connection request matches this policy.	
		If genore user account dial in properties. If the connection request matches the conditions and constraints of this network policy and the policy grants access, perform	
		authorization with network policy only; do not evaluate the dial-in properties of user accounts.	
		Network connection method	
		Select the type of network access server that sends the connection request to NPS. You can select either the network access server type or Vendor specific.	
		C Type of network access gerver:	
	Settings - Then the following settings are applied:	Unspecified	
		/alue C Vendor specific:	
	Extensible Authentication Protocol Configuration C Extended State	Config Blan 10	
		jant	
		Aicro: OK Cancel Apply	
		FAP (	xpired)
		nue nui network access	
	Filter-Id C	CGX-Admin	
	Framed-Protocol F	PP	
灯 Start <i>i</i> 🧉 🦉 👋 👋 Network Policy	/ Server		« 🛄 🎒 🔂 10:21 AM

#### 2.6 Under "Conditions" Tab add "NAS IPv4 address" and "User Groups" (Domain\CGX-Admin)

S Clefts and Servers OLS Clefts mote RADUS Server Groups Pedkoy Name Status Processing Order   Access Type   Source Pedkoy Name Status   Processing Order   Access Type   Source Pedkoy Name Status   Processing Order   Access Type   Source Pedkoy Name Convertions Enabled 1 Graft Access Type   Source Converting   COAA, Badius, Network, Policy Order, Access Type   Source Status   Processing Order   Access Type   Source Coad International   Coad   Source   Coad   Source   Coad   Source   Coad   Source   Coad   Source   Coad   Source   Source   Coad	Action View Help						
Play Issue Technological Policy Series Ser	NPS (Local) RADIUS Clients and Servers RADIUS Clients	Network policies allow you to designate who is	authorized to connect to the netwo	rk and the circumstances under which they	an or cannot connect.		
Secure Weissen Consistons I Evalued 1 Graft Across Unspecified  Secure Weissen Consistons I Evalued 1 Graft Across Unspecified  Secure Weissen Consistons I Evalued 1 Graft Across Unspecified  Access Pretection  ing  Secure Weissen Consistons I Evalued 1  Conditions affect I Evalued 1  Conditions of the network policy  Add  Conditions  Condition	Remote RADIUS Server Groups	Policy Name	Status Processing	Order Access Type Source			
http: Fedded h Pulses k Access Protection  m	Connection Request Policies						
Hi rouse hy detection hy det	Contract Policies		CGXA_Radius_Network_P			×	
they	Health Policies Network Access Protection	1	Overview Conditions Co	netrainte   Settinne			
Condition method the connection use with the connection use with the connection specific House is not match the connection use with the connectio	Accounting	and the second s				1	
condition a relation of policy and evaluates other polices, if additional polices are configured.     conditions are met:         Settings - Then the following conditions are applied:         Settings - Then the following settings are applied:         Settings - Then the following nettings are applied:         Settings - Then the following settings are applied:         Settings - Then the following settings are applied:         Settings - Then the following nettings - Then the following network before - Then then then then then then then then		(					
Cordions - If the following conditions are met:         Condition - Wake         NAS IP-4 Addess       10.20.010         User Groups       S11CGX.Admin         Statings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Adds			If conditions match the cor connection request, NPS s	nection request, NPS uses this policy to aut kips this policy and evaluates other policies,	orize the connection request. If conditions do not if additional policies are configured.	t match the	
Cordions - If the following conditions are met:         Condition - Wake         NAS IP-4 Addess       10.20.010         User Groups       S11CGX.Admin         Statings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Adds		and the second sec					
Cordions - If the following conditions are met:         Condition - Wake         NAS IP-4 Addess       10.20.010         User Groups       S11CGX.Admin         Statings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Adds		•					•
Conditions - If the following conditions are met:         Condition - Wake         NAS IP-4 Address 10.20.010         User Groups STVCGX.Admin         Condition - If the following settings are appled:         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:         Develop User Disk'n Dispote is         Ingoing User Disk'n Dispote is         The         Extension Relation Relation Setting         Adden:       Edt         Benerice       Benerice         Adden:       Edt         Benerice       Benerice         Here House Network access       OK         Under Noncomplex Clerifys       The         Relevid       COX/Admin         Preve       File							
Condition - If the following conditions are met:         Condition - Wake         NAS Fire Addess 10.20.010         User Groups - S11COX-Admin         Settings - Then the following settings are acpled:         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are acpled:         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Add		CGXA_Radius_Network_Policy	Has Groups				
Condition       Value         NAS IP-4 Address       10.20.10         User Groups       S11/CGX.Admin         Setings - Then the following settings are applied:       Condition description:         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.       Make         Settings - Then the following settings are applied:       Condition description:         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.       Make         Setting       Make         External & Athentication Protocol Configuration       Configuration         Groups User Dial-In Topoteties       True         Addet       OK         External & Athentication Protocol Configuration       External Athentication Protocol Configuration         Addet       OK         Concell       Apply         Athentication Protocol Configuration       External Athentication Protocol Configuration         Addition User Dial-In Topoteties       True         Athentication Protocol Configuration       External Athentication Protocol Configuration         NoP Enforcement       Alow Mul network access         Updee Noncomplexed Detrins       True         Releved Nove Protocol       PPP			User Groups	STACAX-Admin			
NAS IP-4 Address 10.20.0.0         User Groups       S1\CGX.Admin         Setings - Then the following settings are appled:         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:         Demote User Disk'n Protocol Configuration:         Condition description:         Add:         Externision         Group User Disk'n Protocol Configuration:         Authentication Protocol Configuration:         Authentication Protocol Configuration:         Authentication Protocol Configuration:         Concel Extreme         Heiley Honorities         Tore         Risel-Vitacion         Protocomplex Clears         Tore         Risel-Vitacion         Protocomplant Clearis         Tore		Conditions - If the following conditions are met:					
NAS IP-4 Address 10.20.0.0         User Groups       S1\CGX.Admin         Setings - Then the following settings are appled:         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:         Demote User Disk'n Protocol Configuration:         Condition description:         Add:         Externision         Group User Disk'n Protocol Configuration:         Authentication Protocol Configuration:         Authentication Protocol Configuration:         Authentication Protocol Configuration:         Concel Extreme         Heiley Honorities         Tore         Risel-Vitacion         Protocomplex Clears         Tore         Risel-Vitacion         Protocomplant Clearis         Tore		Condition					
User Groups       S11:CGX:Admin         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       Condition description:         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Settings - Then the following settings are appled:       The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Adda       Edit         Beneroide       Groups         Adda       Edit         Proves-Provide       More         Athencication Potocol Method       Rep         Athencication Method       Edit         Prove-Protocol       PEP							
Setings - Then the following settings are applied:         Settings - Then the following settings are applied:         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Setting         Setting         Setting - Then the following settings are applied:         The User Groups condition specifies that the connecting user must belong to one of the selected groups.         Add							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>		User Groups 31 Cdx/Admin					
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied: <ul> <li>Settings - Then the following settings are applied:</li> <li>Add</li></ul>							
Settings - Then the following settings are applied:     Yake       Settings - Then the following settings are applied:     Yake       Settings - Then the following settings are applied:     Config       Extended State     GBain       Ignore User Dial-In Protocol Configuration     Config       Add:     Eide       Bemove     GBain       Ignore User Dial-In Protocol Configuration     Gard       Access Fermision     Gard       Authentication Protocol Method     APP       Authentication Method     APP       Under Norongisert Olernis     Tote       File-M     COX-Admin       France-Protocol     PPP							
Setting     Value       Extended State     (Banandian Configuration Con		Callera Theorem (all and a setting of a setting of	The User Groups condition	specifies that the connecting user must belo	ng to one of the selected groups.		
Extensible Authentication Protocol Configuration     Config       Extensible Authentication Protocol Configuration     CBan       Ignore User Dial-In Properties     True       Access Permission     Cancel       Authentication Protocol Method     Moroul       Authentication Protocol Method     Moroul       Authentication Protocol Method     Moroul       NAP Enforcement     Alow full network access       Update Noncompliant Clerits     True       Field     CGX-Admin       France-Protocol     PP			_				
Exerved State <ban< td="">       Ignore User Outh Propeter     Toe       Access Permission     Grant       Exervice Athentication Protocol Method     More       Authentication Method     EXP       NP Enforcement     Alow full retwork access       Updet Noncompliant Others     Toe       Filed-M     COX-Admin       Frame-Protocol     EXP</ban<>		Setting V	alue				
Ignore User Dia-In Propettes     True       Access Permission     Grant       Extensible Authentication Protocol Method     More       Authentication Method     More       Authentication Method     Kare       OK     Cancel       Update Noncompliant Cients     True       Filerel-d     CGX-Admin       Fine-Photocol     PP		Extensible Authentication Protocol Configuration C	Config		Add Edit	Bemove	
Access Permission     Grant       Extensible Authentication Protocol Method     More       Authentication Method     EAPC       Authentication Method     EAPC       NAPE Endocument     Allow full network access       Update Noncomplant Clemst     Tote       Filed-M     COX-Admin       Frame-Shotool     PP		Extended State <	Blan				
Edensible Authentication Protocol Method     Microl     OK     Cancel     ▲(IPI)//       Authentication Method     EAP     Advortune tetratoria     Microl     has expired)       NAP Entitioncomplet Clents     True     True     True       Filter Hd     CGX-Atmin       Frame-Protocol     PPP		Ignore User Dial-In Properties T	rue				
Autoritation Method     EAP       NAP Enforcement     Allow full network access       Update Noncomplant Others     True       Filler-kd     CGX-Admin       Frame-Shotocol     PP		Access Permission G	irant				
Authentication Method         EAP (		Extensible Authentication Protocol Method N	ficro:		ОК С	Cancel Apply	
Update Noncomplant Clents True Filer-Id COX-Admin Framed-Protocol PPP		Authentication Method E	AP C		· · ·	has expired)	
Filter-Id CGX-Admin Framed-Protocol PPP		NAP Enforcement A	llow full network access				
Framed-Protocol PPP		Update Noncompliant Clients T	rue				-
		Filter-Id C	GX-Admin				
							-

#### 2.7 Under "Constraints" select the "Authentication Methods"

Network Policy Server				_ 8 ×
Eile Action View Help				
🗢 🔿  🛅 🖬	i			
NPS (Local) RADIUS Clients and Se RADIUS Clients RADIUS Clients Remote RADIUS S	erves	ho is authorized to connect to the network and the circ	unstances under which they can or cannot connect.	
Policies	Policy Name	Status Processing Order Acce	ss Type Source	
Connection Reque			Access Unspecified	
Network Policies	GCXA_Radius_Network_Policy	CGXA Radius Network Policy Proper	· · · ·	X
Health Policies	and the second sec			
Network Access Prote	ection	Overview Conditions Constraints Sett	ings	
National Accounting		Configure the constraints for this network	nalicy	
		If all constraints are not matched by the c	onnection request, network access is denied.	
		Constraints:		
	and the second se			
		Constraints	Allow access only to those clients that authenticate with the specified methods.	
	1-7	Authentication Methods		
	GCGXA_Radius_Network_Policy	15 Idle Timeout	EAP types are negotiated between NPS and the client in the order in which they are	
		Session Timeout	listed.	
	Conditions - If the following conditions are met:	Called Station ID	EAP Types:	
	Condition Value		Microsoft: Protected EAP (PEAP) Move Up	
	NAS IPv4 Address 10.20.0.10	Day and time restrictions	Microsoft: Secured password (EAP-MSCHAP v2)	
	User Groups S1\CGX-Admin	T NAS Port Type	India Bowu	
			■	
			Add Edit Eemove	
			Less secure authentication methods:	
			Microsoft Encrypted Authentication version 2 (MS-CHAP-v2)	
			User can change password after it has expired	
			Microsoft Encrypted Authentication (MS-CHAP)	
			User can change password after it has expired	
			Encrypted authentication (CHAP)	
	Settings - Then the following settings are applied	b	Unencrypted authentication (PAP, SPAP)	
			Allow clients to connect without negotiating an authentication method	
	Setting Extensible Authentication Protocol Configuratio	Value	Perform machine health check only	<b>_</b>
	Extended State	<blan< td=""><td></td><td></td></blan<>		
	Ignore User Dial-In Properties	True		
	Access Permission	Grant		
	Extensible Authentication Protocol Method	Micro:	OK Cancel Apply	
	Authentication Method	EAP (		has expired)
	NAP Enforcement	Allow full network access		
	Update Noncompliant Clients	True		-
	Filter-Id Framed-Protocol	CGX-Admin PPP		-1
	Framed-Protocol	rrr		
🎝 Start 🧉 🚄 ⊌ 🔿	Network Policy Server			« 🛄 🔮 🌏 🕼 10:21 AM

#### 2.8 Under "Settings" tab Select "Standard" and add "Filter-id" as CGX-Admin

Network Policy Server					_ 6
Ele Action View Help					
(= -) 2 📅 🛛 🖬					
NPS (Local)     ADJUS Clients and Servers     ADJUS Clients     RADJUS Clients     Remote RADJUS Server Groups		-	nnect to the network and the circu	nstances under which they can or cannot connect.	
E      Policies     Connection Request Policies	Policy Name			s TVDe 1 Source	X
Network Policies Health Policies	CGXA_Radius_Network_Polk	verview Conditions Constraints			1
☑ Setwork Access Protection Accounting			ork policy. the connection request and the po	licy grants access, settings are applied.	
	CGX-Staff-Byod	Settings:			-
	CGX-Employee-staff	RADIUS Attributes Standard Vendor Specific	then click Edit. If you	butes to RADIUS clients, select a RADIUS standard attribute, and to not configure an attribute, it is not sent to RADIUS clients. See cumentation for required attributes.	
	CGXA_Radius_Network_Pc	Network Access Protection			
	Conditions - If the following cor	Extended State	Attributes: Name Value		
	Condition Value	Routing and Remote Access	Filter-Id CGX-Ad	min	
	NAS IPv4 Address 10.20.0.	A Multilink and Bandwidth			
	User Groups S1\CGX	Allocation Protocol (BAP)			
		TP Filters			
		Encryption			
		🖓 IP Settings	Add	Edit Bemove	
				Ear-	
	Settings - Then the following se				
	Setting				
	Extensible Authentication Pro Extended State				
	Ignore User Dial-In Properties				
	Access Permission			OK Cancel Apply	
	Extensible Authentication Protocol		d EAP (PEAP) OR Microsoft: Secu		
	Authentication Method NAP Enforcement	EAP OR MS-CHAP Allow full network a		ange password after it has expired) OR MS-CHAP v2 OR MS-CHAP v2 (U	Jser can change password after it has expired)
	Update Noncompliant Clients	True	00000		
	Filter-Id	CGX-Admin			
	BAP Percentage of Capacity	Reduce Multilink if	server reaches 50% for 2 minutes		
	,				
🎝 Start 🥔 🚄 🧶 🔷 📴 Active Directory User	s a 😝 Network Policy Server	Event Viewer	*Local Area Connection		« 🛄 🖑 🌏 🕼 11:21 AM

## **Configure CGX-Access to allow login using radius**

- 3.1 Go to CGX-Access > Configuration > General Settings > Servers > Radius Server
- 3.2 Add the NPS server IP and configure same secret as configured on NPS server.
- 3.3 Select "Use for CGX Access Management Interface Authentication"

	RADIUS Server	Radius Clients	DHCP Servers	Mail Servers	Web Proxy Server	
SMS Gateway Whats	App Provider					
Host or IP	10.20.0.3					
Secret	•••••					
Authentication Type	MSCHAPv2	~				
	Use for BYOD Auth	nentication				
[	Use for CGX Acces	s Management Int	erface Authenticat	ion		
				_		

- 3.4 Save
- 3.5 Logout of CGX and login using the username that was added to AD group CGX-Admin.

## To authenticate BYOD users via Network Policy server

Follow the steps above, however in steps

- # 1 You can use existing groups or create a new one and add users to that group.
- # 2.5 Create new policy to authenticate BYOD users, and add byod user group in #2.6.
- # 2.8 Skip this step.
- # 3.3 Select "Use for BYOD Authentication"

**Tip:** For any troubleshooting logs on NPS server

 $\mathsf{Start}\, \mathsf{Event}\,\, \mathsf{Viewer}\, >\, \mathsf{Custom}\,\, \mathsf{Views}\, >\, \mathsf{Server}\,\, \mathsf{Roles}\, >\, \mathsf{Network}\,\, \mathsf{Policy}\,\, \mathsf{and}\,\, \mathsf{Access}\,\, \mathsf{Services}\,\,$ 

#### **End of Document**